

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM S-3  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

**PHX MINERALS INC.**  
(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)

**DELAWARE**  
(State or Other Jurisdiction  
Identification No.)

**73-1055775**  
(IRS Employer  
of Incorporation)

**1320 SOUTH UNIVERSITY DRIVE, SUITE 720  
FORTH WORTH, TX 76107  
Telephone: (405) 945-1560**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**Chad L. Stephens  
Chief Executive Officer  
PHX Minerals Inc.  
1320 South University Drive, Suite 720  
Fort Worth, TX 76107  
(405) 948-1560**

(Name, address, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

**With a copy to:  
Kirk Tucker, Esq.  
Jackson Walker LLP  
1401 McKinney Street, Suite 1900  
Houston, Texas 77010  
Telephone: (713) 752-4389**

**Approximate Date of Commencement of Proposed Sale to the Public:** From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box:

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box:

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering:

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering:

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box:

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box:

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See definitions of "large accelerated filer", "accelerated filer", "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer   
Non-accelerated filer

Accelerated filer   
Smaller reporting company   
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

**The Registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

THE INFORMATION IN THIS PROSPECTUS IS NOT COMPLETE AND MAY BE CHANGED. WE MAY NOT SELL THESE SECURITIES UNTIL THE REGISTRATION STATEMENT FILED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION IS EFFECTIVE. THIS PROSPECTUS IS NOT AN OFFER TO SELL THESE SECURITIES AND IT IS NOT SOLICITING AN OFFER TO BUY THESE SECURITIES IN ANY STATE WHERE THE OFFER OR SALE IS NOT PERMITTED.

Subject to Completion, dated March 12, 2024

PROSPECTUS



# PHX MINERALS INC.

**\$100,000,000**

**Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Debt Securities  
Warrants  
Depositary Shares  
Rights  
Units**

---

This prospectus will allow us to issue up to an aggregate of \$100,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, warrants, shares of our preferred stock that may be represented by depositary shares, and rights to purchase debt securities, common stock, preferred stock or other securities, as well as units that include any of these classes securities, from time to time at prices and on terms to be determined at or prior to the time of the offering. These securities may, if applicable, be convertible into, or exercisable or exchangeable for, other securities described in this prospectus. We may offer and sell these securities to or through one or more underwriters, dealers and agents, or directly to purchasers, on a continuous or delayed basis. This prospectus describes the general terms of these securities. The specific terms of any securities and the specific manner in which we will offer them will be included in a supplement to this prospectus relating to that offering. The applicable prospectus supplement will also show you the total amount of money that we will receive from selling the securities being offered, after the expenses of the offering.

We encourage you to carefully read this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement before you invest in our securities. We also encourage you to read the documents we have referred you to in the “Where You Can Find More Information” section of this prospectus for information on us and for our financial statements. This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of our securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

Our Common Stock is listed on the NYSE under the symbol “PHX.” On March 11, 2024, the last reported sales price of our Common Stock was \$3.02 per share.

---

**INVESTING IN OUR SECURITIES INVOLVES A HIGH DEGREE OF RISK. YOU SHOULD CAREFULLY CONSIDER THE SECTION OF THIS PROSPECTUS ENTITLED “RISK FACTORS” BEGINNING ON PAGE 4 OF THIS PROSPECTUS BEFORE YOU INVEST IN OUR SECURITIES.**

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

---

The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2024

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS .....	1
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION .....	1
CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS .....	2
ABOUT PHX MINERALS INC. ....	3
RISK FACTORS .....	4
USE OF PROCEEDS .....	4
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION .....	5
DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK .....	7
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES .....	11
DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS .....	22
DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES .....	23
DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS .....	25
DESCRIPTION OF UNITS .....	26
LEGAL MATTERS .....	27
EXPERTS .....	27
INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE .....	28

## **ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS**

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may, from time to time, offer and sell any combination of the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings.

This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we sell securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The applicable prospectus supplement may include a discussion of any risk factors or other special considerations that apply to those securities. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change the information in this prospectus. If there is any inconsistency between the information in this prospectus or any information incorporated by reference herein and in a prospectus supplement, you should rely on the information in that prospectus supplement. You should carefully read both this prospectus, any prospectus supplement, any free writing prospectus that we authorize to be distributed to you and any information incorporated by reference into the foregoing, together with additional information described under the headings “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference” and “Where You Can Find More Information,” before buying any of the securities offered under this prospectus.

As used in this prospectus, the terms “Company,” “we,” “our,” “ours” and “us” refer to PHX Minerals Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries, unless we state otherwise or the context indicates otherwise.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus and in any relevant prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus, including any information incorporated herein or therein by reference. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus, any accompanying prospectus supplement, any free writing prospectus or any document incorporated by reference is accurate as of any date other than the date on its front cover. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since the date indicated on the front cover of such documents. Neither this prospectus nor any prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus constitutes an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy any securities other than the securities to which they relate, nor does this prospectus or a prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy securities in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation in such jurisdiction.

## **WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION**

We file annual, quarterly and other reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These SEC filings are available to the public over the Internet at the SEC’s website at <http://www.sec.gov>. Information about us is also available on our website, [www.phxmin.com](http://www.phxmin.com). Other than any SEC filings incorporated by reference in this prospectus, the information available on our website is not part of this prospectus.

## CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and any prospectus supplement contains or incorporates by reference statements that constitute “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). All statements, other than statements of historical fact included in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement regarding our strategy, future operations, financial position, estimated revenues and losses, projected costs, prospects, plans and objectives of management or that address activities, events or developments that we expect or anticipate will or may occur in the future are forward-looking statements. When used in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement, the words “could,” “believe,” “anticipate,” “intend,” “estimate,” “expect,” “project,” “plan,” “predict,” “target” and similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements, although not all forward-looking statements contain such identifying words. All forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this prospectus and any prospectus supplement. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. Although we believe that our plans, intentions and expectations reflected in or suggested by the forward-looking statements we make in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement are reasonable, we can give no assurance that these plans, intentions or expectations will be achieved. We disclose important factors that could cause our actual results to differ materially from our expectations under “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement. These cautionary statements qualify all forward-looking statements attributable to us or persons acting on our behalf.

All such forward-looking statements and any subsequent written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us or any person acting on our behalf are expressly qualified in their entirety by the cautionary statements contained or referred to in this section and any other cautionary statements that may accompany such forward-looking statements. Except as otherwise required by applicable law, we disclaim any duty to update any forward-looking statements.

## **ABOUT PHX MINERALS INC.**

### **Overview**

PHX Minerals Inc., a Delaware corporation, is a Fort Worth-based company focused on perpetual natural gas and oil mineral ownership in resource plays in the United States. Prior to a strategy change in 2019, we participated with a working interest on some of our mineral and leasehold acreage and as a result still hold legacy interests in leasehold acreage and non-operated working interests in natural gas and oil properties.

We were originally founded as a cooperative in 1926, and our shares became publicly traded in 1979. Effective April 1, 2022, we changed our state of incorporation from Oklahoma to Delaware through a merger with a wholly owned subsidiary, which was conducted for such purpose (the “Reincorporation”). Other than the change in the state of incorporation, the Reincorporation did not result in any change in our business, physical location, management, assets, liabilities or net worth, nor did the Reincorporation result in any change in location of our employees, including management.

### **Corporate Information**

Our principal executive offices are located at 1320 South University Drive, Suite 720, Fort Worth, Texas 76107, and our main telephone number is (405) 948-1560.

## **RISK FACTORS**

An investment in our securities involves risks. We urge you to carefully consider all of the information contained in or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and other information which may be contained or incorporated by reference in any applicable prospectus supplement as provided under “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference,” including our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and our Current Reports on Form 8-K. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Please read “Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.” Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including the risks described in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement. If any of these risks occur, our business, financial condition or results of operation could be adversely affected.

## **USE OF PROCEEDS**

The use of proceeds from the sale of any particular offering of securities using this prospectus will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such offering and may include repaying debt, providing working capital, funding capital expenditures, and paying for possible acquisitions or the expansion of our business. The precise amount and timing of the application of these proceeds will depend upon our funding requirements and the availability and cost of other funds.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may use this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement to sell the securities being offered hereby in and outside the United States through the following methods or by any other method permitted pursuant to applicable law:

- through underwriters or dealers;
- directly to purchasers;
- in a rights offering;
- in “at the market” offerings, within the meaning of Rule 415(a)(4) of the Securities Act, to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market on an exchange or otherwise;
- through agents; or
- through a combination of any of these methods.

With respect to any offering by us, the applicable prospectus supplement will include the following information:

- the terms of the offering;
- the names of any underwriters or agents;
- the name or names of any managing underwriter or underwriters;
- the purchase price or initial public offering price of the securities;
- the net proceeds from the sale of the securities;
- any delayed delivery arrangements;
- any underwriting discounts, commissions and other items constituting underwriters’ compensation;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any commissions paid to agents.

### **Sale Through Underwriters or Dealers**

If underwriters are used in the sale, the underwriters will acquire the securities for their own account. The underwriters may resell the securities from time to time in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. Underwriters may offer securities to the public either through underwriting syndicates represented by one or more managing underwriters or directly by one or more firms acting as underwriters. Unless we inform you otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the securities will be subject to certain conditions, and the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all the offered securities if they purchase any of them. The underwriters may change from time to time any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers.

If we offer securities in a subscription rights offering to our existing security holders, we may enter into a standby underwriting agreement with dealers, acting as standby underwriters. We may pay the standby underwriters a commitment fee for the securities they commit to purchase on a standby basis. If we do not enter into a standby underwriting agreement, we may retain a dealer-manager to manage a subscription rights offering for us.

During and after an offering through underwriters, the underwriters may purchase and sell the securities in the open market. These transactions may include overallotment and stabilizing transactions and purchases to



cover syndicate short positions created in connection with the offering. The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid, which means that selling concessions allowed to syndicate members or other broker-dealers for the offered securities sold for their account may be reclaimed by the syndicate if the offered securities are repurchased by the syndicate in stabilizing or covering transactions. These activities may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of the offered securities, which may be higher than the price that might otherwise prevail in the open market. If commenced, the underwriters may discontinue these activities at any time.

Some or all of the securities that we offer through this prospectus may be new issues of securities with no established trading market. Any underwriters to whom we sell our securities for public offering and sale may make a market in those securities, but they will not be obligated to do so and they may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. Accordingly, we cannot assure you of the liquidity of, or continued trading markets for, any securities that we offer.

If dealers are used in the sale of securities, we will sell the securities to them as principals. They may then resell those securities to the public at varying prices determined by the dealers at the time of resale. We will include in the applicable prospectus supplement the names of the dealers and the terms of the transaction.

### **Direct Sales and Sales through Agents**

We may sell the securities directly to institutional investors or others who may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act with respect to any sale of those securities. In this case, no underwriters or agents would be involved. We may also sell the securities through agents designated from time to time at fixed prices or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. In the applicable prospectus supplement, we will name any agent involved in the offer or sale of the offered securities by us, and we will describe any commissions payable to the agent. Unless we inform you otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, any agent will agree to use its reasonable best efforts to solicit purchases for the period of its appointment. We will describe the terms of any sales of these securities in the applicable prospectus supplement.

### **Remarketing Arrangements**

Offered securities may also be offered and sold, if so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, in connection with a remarketing upon their purchase, in accordance with a redemption or repayment pursuant to their terms, or otherwise, by one or more remarketing firms, acting as principals for their own accounts or as agents for us. Any remarketing firm will be identified and the terms of its agreements, if any, with us, and its compensation will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

### **Delayed Delivery Contracts**

If we so indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may authorize agents, underwriters or dealers to solicit offers from certain types of institutions to purchase securities from us at the public offering price under delayed delivery contracts. These contracts would provide for payment and delivery on a specified date in the future. The contracts would be subject only to those conditions described in the applicable prospectus supplement. The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the commission payable for solicitation of those contracts.

### **General Information**

We may have agreements with the agents, dealers, underwriters and remarketing firms to indemnify them against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribute with respect to payments that the agents, dealers, underwriters or remarketing firms may be required to make. Agents, dealers, underwriters and remarketing firms may be customers of, engage in transactions with or perform services for in the ordinary course of their businesses.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

### General

The following is a description of what we consider to be the most important terms of our capital stock and some of the rights of our stockholders. This description summarizes the material terms and provisions of our capital stock. This summary does not purport to be complete and it may not describe every aspect of our capital stock, the rights of our stockholders or other information that may be important to you. It is qualified in its entirety by the provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, each as may be amended and restated, and together referred to as our “Charter Documents,” which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus. For a complete description of our capital stock, we urge you to read our Charter Documents because they, and not this description, define the rights of holders of our capital stock. Our Charter Documents are incorporated by reference into the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Our authorized capital stock consists of fifty-four million ten thousand five hundred (54,010,500) shares, of which fifty-four million five hundred (54,000,500) shares are shares of common stock, par value of \$0.01666 per share (“Common Stock”), and ten thousand (10,000) shares are shares of preferred stock, par value of \$0.01666 per share (“Preferred Stock”). As of March 5, 2024, there were 37,438,237 shares of our Common Stock issued and outstanding and no shares of Preferred Stock issued and outstanding. The outstanding shares of our Common Stock are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

### Common Stock

#### *Listing*

Our Common Stock is listed and principally traded on The New York Stock Exchange under the symbol “PHX”.

#### *Voting Rights*

Each holder of shares of our Common Stock is entitled to one (1) vote for each share held of record by such holder on the applicable record date on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders. Holders of our Common Stock do not have the right to vote cumulatively. Except as otherwise provided by the Delaware General Corporation Law (“DGCL”), our Certificate of Incorporation or our Bylaws, if a quorum is present: (a) at a meeting of stockholders for an uncontested election of directors, directors shall be elected by a majority of the votes validly cast; (b) at a meeting of stockholders for a contested election of directors, directors shall be elected by a plurality of the votes validly cast in such election; and (c) action on any matter other than the election of directors shall be approved by a majority of the votes of the shares of our Common Stock present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote on the action.

Our Certificate of Incorporation provides that except as otherwise required by non-waivable or non-modifiable applicable law, no merger, consolidation, conversion, liquidation or dissolution, nor any action that would result in the same or that would result in the disposition of all or substantially all of our assets, in any such case, which requires stockholder approval under applicable law, shall be valid unless first approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least sixty-six and two-thirds percent (66-2/3%) of the outstanding shares of capital stock then entitled to vote on such matters; provided, however, that if any such action has been approved prior to the vote by the stockholders by two-thirds of the whole board of directors, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of capital stock then entitled to vote on such matters shall be required, to the extent such stockholder approval is otherwise required by the DGCL.

Subject to the rights of holders of any series of Preferred Stock then outstanding, holders of our Common Stock may take action without a meeting, without prior notice and without a vote of stockholders, if a consent or consents in writing, setting forth the action taken, shall be signed by the holders of seventy-five percent (75%) of the outstanding shares of Common Stock.

### ***Dividend Rights***

Subject to any preferential dividend rights granted to the holders of any shares of our Preferred Stock that may at the time be outstanding, holders of our Common Stock are entitled to receive dividends as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors out of funds legally available therefor.

### ***Rights upon Liquidation***

Subject to any preferential rights of outstanding shares of Preferred Stock, holders of our Common Stock are entitled to share pro rata, upon any liquidation or dissolution of PHX Minerals Inc., in all remaining assets legally available for distribution to stockholders.

### ***Other Rights and Preferences***

The holders of our Common Stock do not possess redemption rights, conversion rights, preemptive rights or exchange rights. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of our Common Stock are subject to and may be adversely affected by the rights of the holders of shares of any series of Preferred Stock that we may designate in the future. Our Common Stock has no sinking fund.

### ***Transfer Agent and Registrar***

Computershare is the transfer agent and registrar for our Common Stock.

### ***Certain Anti-Takeover Effects***

Certain provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws and of the DGCL may be deemed to have an anti-takeover effect.

### ***Advance Notice Requirements for Stockholder Proposals and Director Nominations***

Our Bylaws provide that stockholders seeking to bring business before an annual meeting of stockholders or to nominate candidates for election as directors at an annual or special meeting of stockholders must provide timely notice of their proposal in writing to our Corporate Secretary. For nominations or other business to be properly brought before an annual meeting by a stockholder, the stockholder must deliver notice not less than 90 days nor more than 120 days prior to the first anniversary of the date of mailing of the notice for the preceding year's annual stockholders' meeting; provided, however, that in the event that the date of the mailing of the notice for the annual meeting is advanced or delayed by more than 30 days from the first anniversary of the date of mailing of the notice for the preceding year's annual meeting, notice by the stockholder to be timely must be so delivered not earlier than the 120th day prior to the date of mailing of the notice for such annual meeting and not later than the close of business on the later of the 90th day prior to the date of mailing of the notice for such annual meeting or the tenth day following the day on which public announcement of the date of mailing of the notice for such meeting is first made. In the event we call a special meeting of stockholders for the purpose of electing one or more individuals to the board of directors, for a stockholder's nomination to be properly brought before the special meeting, the stockholder's notice must be delivered not earlier than the 120th day prior to such special meeting and not later than the close of business on the later of the 90th day prior to such special meeting or the tenth day following the day on which public announcement is first made of the date of the special meeting and of the nominees proposed by the board of directors to be elected at such meeting. Our Bylaws also specify requirements as to the form and content of a stockholder's notice. These provisions may preclude stockholders from bringing matters before an annual meeting of stockholders or from making nominations for directors at an annual or special meeting of stockholders or may discourage or deter a potential acquirer from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect its own slate of directors or from otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

### ***Additional Authorized Shares of Capital Stock***

The additional shares of authorized Common Stock and Preferred Stock available for issuance under our Certificate of Incorporation could be issued at such times, under such circumstances and with such terms and conditions as to impede a change in control.

### ***Exclusive Forum***

Our Bylaws provide that unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware, to the fullest extent permitted by law, is the sole and exclusive forum for (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed to us or our stockholders by, or other wrongdoing by, any our directors, officers, stockholders, employees or agents; (iii) any action asserting a claim against us arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL, our Certificate of Incorporation or our Bylaws or as to which the DGCL confers jurisdiction on the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware; (iv) any action to interpret, apply, enforce or determine the validity of our Certificate of Incorporation or our Bylaws; or (e) any action asserting a claim against us governed by the internal affairs doctrine. Our Bylaws further provide that unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the federal district courts of the United States shall be the exclusive forum for the resolution of any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. Nothing in the exclusive forum provisions of our Bylaws affects suits brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction.

### ***Section 203 of the DGCL***

As a Delaware corporation, we are subject to Section 203 of the DGCL. This provision provides that a corporation that is listed on a national securities exchange or that has more than 2,000 stockholders is not permitted, with certain exceptions, to engage in a business combination with any interested stockholder, generally a person who owns 15% or more of the outstanding shares of a corporation's voting stock, for three years after the person became an interested stockholder, unless (a) before the person became an interested stockholder, the board of directors approved either the transaction resulting in a person becoming an interested stockholder or the business combination, (b) upon consummating the transaction which resulted in the person becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction commenced (excluding shares owned by persons who are both officers and directors of the corporation, and shares held by certain employee stock ownership plans), or (c) on or after the date the person becomes an interested stockholder, the business combination is approved by the board of directors and at an annual or special meeting of stockholders by the affirmative vote of at least 66-2/3% of the corporation's outstanding voting stock which is not owned by the interested stockholder.

We have not opted out Section 203 of the DGCL and are therefore subject to its provisions.

### ***Staggered Board of Directors***

Our Bylaws provide for the division of our board of directors into three classes, each class consisting as nearly as possible of one-third of the whole board of directors. The term of office of one class of directors expires each year, with each class of directors elected for a term of three years and until their successors are duly elected and qualified or until their earlier death, resignation or removal. Our Bylaws and Section 141 of the DGCL permit the removal of any member of our board of directors only for cause. These provisions could impede a merger, takeover or other business combination involving us or discourage a potential acquirer from making a tender offer for our Common Stock.

In addition, our Bylaws provide that all vacancies, including newly created directorships, may be filled by a majority of the directors then in office, even if less than a quorum.

### ***Special Meetings of Stockholders***

Stockholders do not have the right to call special meetings of stockholders, which may only be called by our board of directors. Our board of directors has the sole right to determine the proper purpose or purposes of any special meeting of stockholders, and business transacted at the meeting is limited to the purposes stated in the notice of the special meeting.

### **Preferred Stock**

Our Certificate of Incorporation authorizes our board of directors to provide, out of the unissued shares of Preferred Stock, for one or more series of Preferred Stock. For any particular series of Preferred Stock that we may issue, our board of directors will determine the rights, preferences and other material terms of that series of Preferred Stock, including, but not limited to:

- the designation of the series;
- the number of shares of the series;
- the dividend rate or rates on the shares of that series, whether dividends will be cumulative, and if so, from which date or dates, and the relative rights of priority, if any, of payment of dividends on shares of that series;
- whether the series will have voting rights, generally or upon specified events, in addition to the voting rights provided by law, and, if so, the terms of such voting rights;
- whether the series will have conversion privileges, and, if so, the terms and conditions of such conversion, including provision for adjustment of the conversion rate in such events as the board of directors shall determine;
- whether or not the shares of that series shall be redeemable, in whole or in part, at our option or the holder thereof, and if made subject to such redemption, the terms and conditions of such redemption, including the date or dates upon or after which they shall be redeemable, and the amount per share payable in case of redemptions, which amount may vary under different conditions and at different redemption rates;
- the terms and amount of any sinking fund provided for the purchase or redemption of the shares of such series;
- the rights of the shares of that series in the event of voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution, or winding up of PHX Minerals Inc., and the relative rights of priority, if any, of payment of shares of that series;
- the restrictions, if any, on the issue or reissue of any additional Preferred Stock; and
- any other relative rights, preferences, and limitations of that series.

Our board of directors has the ability to issue a series of Preferred Stock that could, depending on the terms of the series, impede or discourage an acquisition attempt or other transaction that any number of the holders of our Common Stock might believe to be in their best interest or in which the holders of our Common Stock might receive a premium for their shares of our Common Stock over the market price of our Common Stock. The issuance of Preferred Stock may adversely affect the holders of our Common Stock, including, without limitation, by restricting dividends on our Common Stock, diluting the voting power of our Common Stock or subordinating the liquidation rights of our Common Stock. As a result of these and other factors, the issuance of Preferred Stock could have an adverse impact on the market price of our Common Stock.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

The following is a general description of the debt securities that we may offer from time to time. We may also sell hybrid securities that combine certain features of debt securities and other securities described in this prospectus. As you read this section, please remember that the specific terms of a debt security as described in the applicable prospectus supplement will supplement, and may modify or replace, the general terms described in this section. If there are any differences between the applicable prospectus supplement and this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement will control. As a result, the statements we make in this section may not apply to the debt security that you purchase. Capitalized terms used in this description of debt securities but not defined herein have the definitions assigned to them in the applicable Indenture.

### General

The debt securities (“Debt Securities”) that we may issue will be either our senior debt securities (“Senior Debt Securities”) or our subordinated debt securities (“Subordinated Debt Securities”). We anticipate that the Senior Debt Securities and the Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued under separate indentures to be entered into between us and one or more trustees to be named in the applicable prospectus supplement, as trustee (each, a “Trustee”), and the indentures may be supplemented or amended from time to time following their execution. Senior Debt Securities will be issued under a “Senior Indenture” and Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued under a “Subordinated Indenture.” Together, the Senior Indenture and the Subordinated Indenture are called “Indentures.” The forms of Indenture give us broad authority to set the particular terms of each series of Debt Securities issued thereunder, including, without limitation, the right to modify certain of the terms contained in the Indentures. In addition, we anticipate that each Trustee will negotiate changes to our form of Indenture.

The Debt Securities may be issued from time to time in one or more series. The particular terms of each series that are offered by a prospectus supplement will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. The Debt Securities that we may issue may constitute debentures, notes, bonds or other evidences of our indebtedness.

The Indentures provide that Debt Securities may be issued in separate series from time to time without limitation as to aggregate principal amount. We may specify a maximum aggregate principal amount for the Debt Securities of any series. We will determine the terms and conditions of the Debt Securities, including the maturity, principal and interest, but those terms must be consistent with the applicable Indenture.

The Subordinated Debt Securities will be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our senior debt as described under “–Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities” and in the applicable prospectus supplement applicable to any Subordinated Debt Securities. If the applicable prospectus supplement so indicates, the Debt Securities may be convertible into our Common Stock or Preferred Stock.

We have summarized selected provisions of the Indentures below. The summary is not complete and is subject to, and qualified entirely by reference to, all of the provisions of the applicable Indenture, any supplemental Indenture, and certificates evidencing the applicable Debt Securities, the forms of which are or will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement that includes this prospectus or will be filed as an exhibit to a Current Report of Form 8-K and incorporated by reference into the registration statement that includes this prospectus. You should read the Indentures, any supplemental Indentures and the certificates evidencing the applicable Debt Securities for provisions that may be important to you. Capitalized terms used in this summary have the meanings specified in the Indentures.

### Information You Will Find in the Prospectus Supplement

A prospectus supplement, the applicable Indenture and the supplemental Indenture, if any, relating to any series of Debt Securities being offered will include specific terms relating to the offering. These terms may include some or all of the following:

- the title of the Debt Securities;

- whether the Debt Securities are Senior Debt Securities or Subordinated Debt Securities and, if Subordinated Debt Securities, the related subordination terms;
- any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the Debt Securities;
- each date on which the principal of the Debt Securities will be payable;
- the interest rate that the Debt Securities will bear and the interest payment dates for the Debt Securities;
- each place where payments on the Debt Securities will be payable;
- any terms upon which the Debt Securities may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at our option;
- any sinking fund or other provisions that would obligate us to redeem or otherwise repurchase the Debt Securities;
- the portion of the principal amount, if less than all, of the Debt Securities that will be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity of the Debt Securities;
- whether the Debt Securities are defeasible;
- any addition to or change in the Events of Default;
- whether the Debt Securities are convertible into our Common Stock or Preferred Stock and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which conversion will be effected, including the initial conversion price or conversion rate and any adjustments thereto and the conversion period;
- any addition to or change in the covenants in the Indenture applicable to the Debt Securities; and
- any other terms of the Debt Securities not inconsistent with the provisions of the Indenture.

Debt Securities, including any Debt Securities that provide for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof (“Original Issue Discount Securities”), may be sold at a substantial discount below their principal amount. Special United States federal income tax considerations applicable to Debt Securities sold at an original issue discount may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. In addition, special United States federal income tax or other considerations applicable to any Debt Securities that are denominated in a currency or currency unit other than United States dollars may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

### **Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities**

The indebtedness evidenced by the Subordinated Debt Securities will, to the extent set forth in the Subordinated Indenture or any supplemental Indenture with respect to each series of Subordinated Debt Securities, be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our senior debt, including the Senior Debt Securities, and it may also be senior or subordinated in right of payment to any or all of our other subordinated debt. The applicable prospectus supplement relating to any Subordinated Debt Securities will summarize the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture applicable to that series including:

- the applicability and effect of such provisions upon any payment or distribution respecting that series following any liquidation, dissolution or other winding-up, or any assignment for the benefit of creditors or other marshalling of assets or any bankruptcy, insolvency or similar proceedings;
- the applicability and effect of such provisions in the event of specified defaults with respect to any senior debt, including the circumstances under which and the periods during which we will be prohibited from making payments on the Subordinated Debt Securities; and
- the definition of senior debt applicable to the Subordinated Debt Securities of that series and, if the series is issued on a senior subordinated basis, the definition of subordinated debt applicable to that series.

The applicable prospectus supplement will also describe as of a recent date the approximate amount of senior debt to which the Subordinated Debt Securities of that series will be subordinated.

The failure to make any payment on any of the Subordinated Debt Securities by reason of the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture described in the applicable prospectus supplement will not be construed as preventing the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Subordinated Debt Securities arising from any such failure to make payment.

The subordination provisions described above will not be applicable to payments in respect of the Subordinated Debt Securities from a defeasance trust established in connection with any legal defeasance or covenant defeasance of the Subordinated Debt Securities as described under “–Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.”

### **Form, Exchange and Transfer**

The Debt Securities of each series will be issuable only in fully registered form, without coupons, and, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, only in denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples thereof.

Subject to the terms of the applicable Indenture and the limitations applicable to Global Securities, Debt Securities may be presented for registration of transfer or exchange (duly endorsed or with the form of transfer or exchange endorsed thereon duly executed) at the office of the Security Registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by us for such purpose.

No service charge will be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Debt Securities, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith. Such exchange or transfer will be effected upon the Security Registrar or such transfer agent, as the case may be, being satisfied with the documents of title and identity of the person making the request. The Security Registrar and any other transfer agent initially designated by us for any Debt Securities will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement. We may at any time designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each Place of Payment for the Debt Securities of each series.

If the Debt Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, we will not be required to (1) issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Debt Security of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any such Debt Security that may be selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (2) register the transfer of any Debt Security so selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any such Debt Security being redeemed in part.

### **Global Securities**

Some or all of the Debt Securities of any series may be represented, in whole or in part, by one or more Global Securities that will have an aggregate principal amount equal to that of the Debt Securities they represent. Each Global Security will be registered in the name of a Depository or its nominee identified in the applicable prospectus supplement, will be deposited with such Depository or nominee or its custodian and will bear a legend regarding the restrictions on exchanges and registration of transfer thereof referred to below and any such other matters as may be provided for pursuant to the applicable Indenture.

Notwithstanding any provision of the Indentures or any Debt Security described in this prospectus, no Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Debt Securities registered, and no transfer of a Global



Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any Person other than the Depositary for such Global Security or any nominee of such Depositary unless:

- the Depositary has notified us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depositary for such Global Security or has ceased to be qualified to act as such as required by the applicable Indenture, and in either case we fail to appoint a successor Depositary within 90 days;
- an Event of Default with respect to the Debt Securities represented by such Global Security has occurred and is continuing and the Trustee has received a written request from the Depositary to issue certificated Debt Securities;
- subject to the rules of the Depositary, we shall have elected to terminate the book-entry system through the Depositary; or
- other circumstances exist, in addition to or in lieu of those described above, as may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

All certificated Debt Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security or any portion thereof will be registered in such names as the Depositary may direct.

As long as the Depositary, or its nominee, is the registered holder of a Global Security, the Depositary or such nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner and Holder of such Global Security and the Debt Securities that it represents for all purposes under the Debt Securities and the applicable Indenture. Except in the limited circumstances referred to above, owners of beneficial interests in a Global Security will not be entitled to have such Global Security or any Debt Securities that it represents registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of certificated Debt Securities in exchange for those interests and will not be considered to be the owners or Holders of such Global Security or any Debt Securities that it represents for any purpose under the Debt Securities or the applicable Indenture. All payments on a Global Security will be made to the Depositary or its nominee, as the case may be, as the Holder of the security. The laws of some jurisdictions may require that some purchasers of Debt Securities take physical delivery of such Debt Securities in certificated form. These laws may impair the ability to transfer beneficial interests in a Global Security.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a Global Security will be limited to institutions that have accounts with the Depositary or its nominee (“participants”) and to persons that may hold beneficial interests through participants. In connection with the issuance of any Global Security, the Depositary will credit, on its book-entry registration and transfer system, the respective principal amounts of Debt Securities represented by the Global Security to the accounts of its participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in a Global Security will be shown only on, and the transfer of those ownership interests will be effected only through, records maintained by the Depositary (with respect to participants’ interests) or any such participant (with respect to interests of Persons held by such participants on their behalf). Payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to beneficial interests in a Global Security may be subject to various policies and procedures adopted by the Depositary from time to time. None of us, the Trustees or the agents of us or the Trustees will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the Depositary’s or any participant’s records relating to, or for payments made on account of, beneficial interests in a Global Security, or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial interests.

### **Payment and Paying Agents**

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, payment of interest on a Debt Security on any Interest Payment Date will be made to the Person in whose name such Debt Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, principal of and any premium and interest on the Debt Securities of a particular series will be payable at the office of such Paying Agent or Paying

Agents as we may designate for such purpose from time to time, except that at our option payment of any interest on Debt Securities in certificated form may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address appears in the Security Register. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the corporate trust office of the Trustee under the Senior Indenture will be designated as sole Paying Agent for payments with respect to Senior Debt Securities of each series, and the corporate trust office of the Trustee under the Subordinated Indenture will be designated as the sole Paying Agent for payment with respect to Subordinated Debt Securities of each series. Any other Paying Agents initially designated by us for the Debt Securities of a particular series will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement. We may at any time designate additional Paying Agents or rescind the designation of any Paying Agent or approve a change in the office through which any Paying Agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a Paying Agent in each Place of Payment for the Debt Securities of a particular series.

All funds paid by us to a Paying Agent for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Debt Security which remains unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable will be repaid to us, and the Holder of such Debt Security thereafter may look only to us for payment.

### **Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets**

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may not consolidate with or merge into, or transfer, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of our assets to, any Person (a “successor Person”), and may not permit any Person to consolidate with or merge into us, unless:

- the successor Person (if not us) is a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of any domestic jurisdiction and assumes our obligations on the Debt Securities and under the Indentures;
- immediately before and after giving pro forma effect to the transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, has occurred and is continuing; and
- several other conditions, including any additional conditions with respect to any particular Debt Securities specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, are met.

The successor Person (if not us) will be substituted for us under the applicable Indenture with the same effect as if it had been an original party to such Indenture, and, except in the case of a lease, we will be relieved from any further obligations under such Indenture and the Debt Securities.

### **Events of Default**

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, each of the following will constitute an Event of Default under the applicable Indenture with respect to Debt Securities of any series:

- failure to pay principal of or any premium on any Debt Security of that series when due, whether or not, in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, such payment is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;
- failure to pay any interest on any Debt Securities of that series when due, continues for 30 days, whether or not, in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, such payment is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;
- failure to deposit any sinking fund payment when due, in respect of any Debt Security of that series, whether or not, in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, such deposit is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;

- failure to perform or comply with the provisions described under “–Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets”;
- failure to perform any of our other covenants in such Indenture (other than a covenant included in such Indenture solely for the benefit of a series other than that series), continues for 60 days after written notice has been given by the applicable Trustee, or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series, as provided in such Indenture;
- any Debt is not paid within any applicable grace period after final maturity or is accelerated by its Holders because of a default;
- any judgment or decree for the payment of money is entered against us, remains outstanding for a period of 60 consecutive days following entry of such judgment, and is not discharged, waived or stayed; and
- certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization affecting us.

Additional or different Events of Default applicable to a series of Debt Securities may be described in a prospectus supplement. An Event of Default of one series of Debt Securities is not necessarily an Event of Default for any other series of Debt Securities.

Unless we indicate otherwise in a prospectus supplement, if an Event of Default with respect to the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, either the applicable Trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series by notice as provided in the Indenture may declare the principal amount of the Debt Securities of that series (or, in the case of any Debt Security that is an Original Issue Discount Debt Security, such portion of the principal amount of such Debt Security as may be specified in the terms of such Debt Security) to be due and payable immediately, together with any accrued and unpaid interest thereon. After any such acceleration and its consequences, but before a judgment or decree based on acceleration, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul such acceleration if all Events of Default with respect to that series, other than the non-payment of accelerated principal (or other specified amount), have been cured or waived as provided in the applicable Indenture. For information as to waiver of defaults, see “–Modification and Waiver” below.

Subject to the provisions of the Indentures relating to the duties of the Trustees in case an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, no Trustee will be under any obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the applicable Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders, unless such Holders have offered to such Trustee reasonable security or indemnity. Subject to such provisions for the indemnification of the Trustees, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to such Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Debt Securities of that series. No Holder of a Debt Security of any series will have any right to institute any proceeding with respect to the applicable Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy thereunder, unless:

- such Holder has previously given to the Trustee under the applicable Indenture written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Debt Securities of that series;
- the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series have made written request, and such Holder or Holders have offered reasonable security or indemnity, to the Trustee to institute such proceeding as trustee; and
- the Trustee has failed to institute such proceeding, and has not received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series a direction inconsistent with such request, within 60 days after such notice, request and offer.

However, such limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by a Holder of a Debt Security for the enforcement of payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on such Debt Security on or after the applicable due date specified in such Debt Security or, if applicable, to convert such Debt Security.

We will be required to furnish to each Trustee annually a statement by certain of our officers, to their knowledge, as to whether or not we are in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of the applicable Indenture and, if so, specifying all such known defaults.

### **Modification and Waiver**

We may modify or amend an Indenture without the consent of any Holders of the Debt Securities in certain circumstances, including:

- to evidence the succession under the Indenture of another Person to us and to provide for its assumption of our obligations to Holders of Debt Securities;
- to make any changes that would add any additional covenants of us for the benefit of the Holders of Debt Securities or that do not adversely affect the rights under the Indenture of the Holders of Debt Securities in any material respect;
- to add any additional Events of Default;
- to provide for uncertificated notes in addition to or in place of certificated notes;
- to secure the Debt Securities;
- to establish the form or terms of any series of Debt Securities;
- to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment under the Indenture of a successor Trustee;
- to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency; or
- in the case of any Subordinated Debt Security, to make any change in the subordination provisions that limits or terminates the benefits applicable to any Holder of Senior Debt.

Other modifications and amendments of an Indenture may be made by us and the applicable Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of each series affected by such modification or amendment; provided, however, that no such modification or amendment may, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Debt Security affected thereby:

- change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Debt Security;
- reduce the principal amount of, or any premium or interest on, any Debt Security;
- reduce the amount of principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Debt Security payable upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof;
- change the place or currency of payment of principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Debt Security;
- impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment due on or any conversion right with respect to any Debt Security;
- modify the subordination provisions in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, or modify any conversion provisions, in either case in a manner adverse to the Holders of the Subordinated Debt Securities;
- reduce the percentage in principal amount of Outstanding Debt Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for modification or amendment of the Indenture;

- reduce the percentage in principal amount of Outstanding Debt Securities of any series necessary for waiver of compliance with certain provisions of the Indenture or for waiver of certain defaults;
- modify such provisions with respect to modification, amendment or waiver; or
- following the making of an offer to purchase Debt Securities from any Holder that has been made pursuant to a covenant in such Indenture, modify such covenant in a manner adverse to such Holder.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series may waive compliance by us with certain restrictive provisions of the applicable Indenture. The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series may waive any past default under the applicable Indenture, except a default in the payment of principal, premium or interest and certain covenants and provisions of the Indenture which cannot be amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Debt Security of such series. Each of the Indentures provides that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities have given or taken any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under such Indenture as of any date:

- the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that will be deemed to be Outstanding will be the amount of the principal that would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of Maturity to such date;
- if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Debt Security is not determinable (for example, because it is based on an index), the principal amount of such Debt Security deemed to be Outstanding as of such date will be an amount determined in the manner prescribed for such Debt Security;
- the principal amount of a Debt Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units that will be deemed to be Outstanding will be the United States-dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner prescribed for such Debt Security, of the principal amount of such Debt Security (or, in the case of a Debt Security described in the two clauses above, of the amount described in such clause); and
- certain Debt Securities, including those owned by us or any of our affiliates, will not be deemed to be Outstanding.

Except in certain limited circumstances, we will be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Debt Securities of any series entitled to give or take any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under the applicable Indenture, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Indenture. In certain limited circumstances, the Trustee will be entitled to set a record date for action by Holders. If a record date is set for any action to be taken by Holders of a particular series, only persons who are Holders of Outstanding Debt Securities of that series on the record date may take such action. To be effective, such action must be taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of such Debt Securities within a specified period following the record date. For any particular record date, this period will be 180 days or such other period as may be specified by us (or the Trustee, if it set the record date), and may be shortened or lengthened (but not beyond 180 days) from time to time.

### **Satisfaction and Discharge**

Each Indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect as to all Outstanding Debt Securities of any series issued thereunder, when:

- either:
  - all Outstanding Debt Securities of that series that have been authenticated (except lost, stolen or destroyed Debt Securities that have been replaced or paid and Debt Securities for whose payment funds have theretofore been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to us) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

- all Outstanding Debt Securities of that series that have been not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation have become due and payable or will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee and in any case we have irrevocably deposited with the Trustee funds in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay the entire indebtedness of such Debt Securities not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the Stated Maturity or redemption date;
- we have paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable by us under the Indenture with respect to the Debt Securities of that series; and
- we have delivered an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the Trustee stating that all conditions precedent to satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture with respect to the Debt Securities of that series have been satisfied.

### **Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance**

To the extent indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may elect, at our option at any time, to have our obligations discharged under provisions relating to defeasance and discharge of indebtedness, which we call "legal defeasance," or relating to defeasance of certain restrictive covenants applied to the Debt Securities of any series, or to any specified part of a series, which we call "covenant defeasance."

*Legal Defeasance.* The Indentures provide that, upon our exercise of our option (if any) to have the legal defeasance provisions applied to any series of Debt Securities, we will be discharged from all our obligations, and, if such Debt Securities are Subordinated Debt Securities, the provisions of the Subordinated Indenture relating to subordination will cease to be effective, with respect to such Debt Securities (except for certain obligations to convert or register the transfer of Debt Securities, to replace stolen, lost or mutilated Debt Securities, to maintain paying agencies and to hold funds for payment in trust) upon the deposit in trust for the benefit of the Holders of such Debt Securities of money or U.S. Government Obligations, or both, which, through the payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms, will provide money in an amount sufficient (in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants) to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on such Debt Securities on the respective Stated Maturities in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture and such Debt Securities. Such defeasance or discharge may occur only if, among other things:

- we have delivered to the applicable Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that we have received from, or there has been published by, the United States Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or there has been a change in tax law, in either case to the effect that Holders of such Debt Securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and legal defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and legal defeasance were not to occur;
- no Event of Default or event that with the passing of time or the giving of notice, or both, shall constitute an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with respect to any Event of Default as a result of our bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization, at any time until 121 days after such deposit;
- such deposit and legal defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any agreement or instrument (other than the applicable Indenture) to which we are a party or by which we are bound;
- in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, at the time of such deposit, no default in the payment of all or a portion of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing, no event of default shall have resulted in the acceleration of any Senior Debt and no other event of default with respect to any Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing permitting after notice or the lapse of time, or both, the acceleration thereof; and

- we have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940.

*Covenant Defeasance.* The Indentures provide that, upon our exercise of our option (if any) to have the covenant defeasance provisions applied to any Debt Securities, we may fail to comply with certain restrictive covenants (but not with respect to conversion, if applicable), including those that may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement, and the occurrence of certain Events of Default, which may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement, will not be deemed to either be or result in an Event of Default and, if such Debt Securities are Subordinated Debt Securities, the provisions of the Subordinated Indenture relating to subordination will cease to be effective, in each case with respect to such Debt Securities. In order to exercise such option, we must deposit, in trust for the benefit of the Holders of such Debt Securities, money or U.S. Government Obligations, or both, which, through the payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms, will provide money in an amount sufficient (in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants) to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on such Debt Securities on the respective Stated Maturities in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture and such Debt Securities. Such covenant defeasance may occur only if we have delivered to the applicable Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that Holders of such Debt Securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and covenant defeasance were not to occur. If we exercise this option with respect to any series of Debt Securities and such Debt Securities were declared due and payable because of the occurrence of any Event of Default, the amount of money and U.S. Government Obligations so deposited in trust would be sufficient to pay amounts due on such Debt Securities at the time of their respective Stated Maturities but may not be sufficient to pay amounts due on such Debt Securities upon any acceleration resulting from such Event of Default. In such case, we would remain liable for such payments.

#### **No Personal Liability of Directors, Officers, Employees and Stockholders**

No director, officer, employee, incorporator, stockholder, member, partner or trustee of PHX Minerals Inc., as such, shall have any liability for any our obligations under the Debt Securities or the Indentures or for any claim based on, in respect of, or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. By accepting a Debt Security, each Holder shall be deemed to have waived and released all such liability. The waiver and release shall be a part of the consideration for the issue of the Debt Securities. The waiver may not be effective to waive liabilities under the federal securities laws, and it is the view of the SEC that such a waiver is against public policy.

#### **Notices**

Notices to Holders of Debt Securities will be given by mail to the addresses of such Holders as they may appear in the Security Register.

#### **Title**

We, the Trustees and any agent of us or a Trustee may treat the Person in whose name a Debt Security is registered as the absolute owner of the Debt Security (whether or not such Debt Security may be overdue) for the purpose of making payment and for all other purposes.

#### **The Trustee**

We anticipate that we will enter into the Indentures with one or more Trustee that is qualified to act under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the "Trust Indenture Act"), and with any other Trustees chosen by us and appointed in a supplement indenture for a particular series of Debt Securities. We may retain a banking relationship in the ordinary course of business with our Trustee and one or more of its affiliates.

*Resignation or Removal of Trustee.* If the Trustee has or acquires a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee must either eliminate its conflicting interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and the applicable Indenture. Any resignation will require the appointment of a successor Trustee under the applicable Indenture in accordance with the terms and conditions of such Indenture.

The Trustee may resign or be removed by us with respect to one or more series of Debt Securities and a successor Trustee may be appointed to act with respect to any such series. The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Debt Securities of any series may remove the Trustee with respect to the Debt Securities of such series.

*Limitations on Trustee if Trustee Is Our Creditor.* Each Indenture will contain certain limitations on the right of the Trustee, in the event that it becomes our creditor, to obtain payment of claims in certain cases, or to realize on certain property received in respect of any such claim as security or otherwise.

*Certificates and Opinions to Be Furnished to Trustee.* Each Indenture will provide that, in addition to other certificates or opinions that may be specifically required by other provisions of an Indenture, every application by us for action by the Trustee must be accompanied by an Officers' Certificate stating that, in the opinion of the signers, all conditions precedent to such action have been complied with by us.



## DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

We may issue warrants to purchase our Common Stock, Preferred Stock, depositary shares, debt securities or units. Warrants may be issued independently or together with any other securities and may be attached to, or separate from, such securities. Each series of warrants will be issued under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a warrant agent. In addition to this summary, you should refer to the warrant agreement, including the forms of warrant certificate representing the warrants, relating to the specific warrants being offered for the complete terms of the warrant agreement and the warrants. That warrant agreement, together with the terms of warrant certificate and warrants, will be filed with the SEC in connection with the offering of the specific warrants.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the terms of any series of warrants in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered, including, where applicable, the following:

- the title of such warrants;
- the aggregate number of such warrants;
- the price or prices at which such warrants will be issued;
- the currency or currencies in which the price of such warrants will be payable;
- the securities or other rights, including rights to receive payment in cash or securities based on the value, rate or price of one or more specified commodities, currencies, securities or indices, or any combination of the foregoing, purchasable upon exercise of such warrants;
- the price at which and the currency or currencies in which the securities or other rights purchasable upon exercise of such warrants may be purchased;
- the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right shall expire;
- the minimum or maximum amount of such warrants that may be exercised at any one time;
- the anti-dilution provisions of such warrants;
- the redemption or call provisions of such warrants;
- provisions regarding changes to or adjustments in the exercise price;
- the designation and terms of the securities with which such warrants are issued and the number of such warrants issued with each such security;
- the date on and after which such warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- a discussion of any material United States federal income tax considerations; and
- any other terms of such warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such warrants.

Until they exercise their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon exercise, and will not be entitled to:

- receive payments of principal of (or premium, if any, on) or interest, if any, on any debt securities purchasable upon exercise;
- receive dividend payments, if any, with respect to any underlying securities; or
- exercise the voting rights of any Common Stock or preferred stock purchasable upon exercise.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES

### General

We may, at our option, elect to have shares of Preferred Stock be represented by depositary shares. The shares of any series of the Preferred Stock underlying the depositary shares will be deposited under a separate deposit agreement between us and a bank or trust company selected by us as the depositary. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, each owner of a depositary share will be entitled, in proportion to the applicable interest in the number of shares of Preferred Stock underlying such depositary share, to all the rights and preferences of the Preferred Stock underlying such depositary share, including dividend, voting, redemption, conversion, exchange and liquidation rights.

The depositary shares will be evidenced by depositary receipts issued pursuant to the deposit agreement, each of which will represent the applicable interest in a number of shares of a particular series of the Preferred Stock described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, a holder of depositary shares is not entitled to receive the shares of Preferred Stock underlying the depositary shares.

### Dividends and Other Distributions

The depositary will distribute all cash dividends or other cash distributions received in respect of the Preferred Stock to the record holders of depositary shares representing such Preferred Stock in proportion to the numbers of such depositary shares owned by such holders on the relevant record date.

In the event of a distribution other than in cash, the depositary will distribute property received by it to the record holders of depositary shares entitled thereto or the depositary may, with our approval, sell such property and distribute the net proceeds from such sale to such holders.

### Redemption of Depositary Shares

If Preferred Stock underlying the depositary shares is subject to redemption, the depositary shares will be redeemed from the proceeds received by the depositary resulting from the redemption, in whole or in part, of the Preferred Stock held by the depositary. The redemption price per depositary share will be equal to the aggregate redemption price payable with respect to the number of shares of Preferred Stock underlying the depositary shares. Whenever we redeem Preferred Stock from the depositary, the depositary will redeem as of the same redemption date a proportionate number of depositary shares representing the shares of Preferred Stock that were redeemed. If less than all the depositary shares are to be redeemed, the depositary shares to be redeemed will be selected by lot, pro rata or by another equitable method as may be determined by us.

After the date fixed for redemption, the depositary shares so called for redemption will no longer be deemed to be outstanding and all rights of the holders of the depositary shares will cease, except the right to receive the redemption price payable upon such redemption. Any funds deposited by us with the depositary for any depositary shares which the holders thereof fail to redeem shall be returned to us after a period of two years from the date such funds are so deposited.

### Voting

Upon receipt of notice of any meeting or action in lieu of any meeting at which the holders of any shares of Preferred Stock underlying the depositary shares are entitled to vote, the depositary will mail the information contained in such notice to the record holders of the depositary shares relating to such Preferred Stock. Each record holder of such depositary shares on the record date (which will be the same date as the record date for the

Preferred Stock) will be entitled to instruct the depositary as to the exercise of the voting rights pertaining to the number of shares of Preferred Stock underlying such holder's depositary shares. The depositary will endeavor, insofar as practicable, to vote the number of shares of Preferred Stock underlying such depositary shares in accordance with such instructions, and we will agree to take all action which may be deemed necessary by the depositary in order to enable the depositary to do so.

### **Amendment of the Depositary Agreement**

The form of depositary receipt evidencing the depositary shares and any provision of the deposit agreement may at any time be amended by agreement between us and the depositary; provided, however, that any amendment that materially and adversely alters the rights of the existing holders of depositary shares will not be effective unless such amendment has been approved by at least a majority of the depositary shares then outstanding.

### **Charges of Depositary**

We will pay all transfer and other taxes and governmental charges that arise solely from the existence of the depositary arrangements. We will pay charges of the depositary in connection with the initial deposit of the Preferred Stock and any exchange or redemption of the Preferred Stock. Holders of depositary shares will pay all other transfer and other taxes and governmental charges, and, in addition, such other charges as are expressly provided in the deposit agreement to be for their accounts.

### **Miscellaneous**

We, or at our option, the depositary, will forward to the holders of depositary shares all reports and communications from us that we are required to furnish to the holders of Preferred Stock.

Neither the depositary nor we will be liable if either of us is prevented or delayed by law or any circumstances beyond our control in performing our obligations under the deposit agreement. Our obligations and those of the depositary under the deposit agreement will be limited to performance in good faith of our duties thereunder, and we and the depositary will not be obligated to prosecute or defend any legal proceeding in respect of any depositary share or Preferred Stock unless satisfactory indemnity has been furnished. We and the depositary may rely upon written advice of counsel or accountants, or information provided by persons presenting Preferred Stock for deposit, holders of depositary shares or other persons believed to be competent and on documents believed to be genuine.

### **Resignation and Removal of Depositary; Termination of the Deposit Agreement**

The depositary may resign at any time by delivering to us notice of its election to do so, and we may at any time remove the depositary, any such resignation or removal to take effect upon the appointment of a successor depositary and its acceptance of such appointment. Such successor depositary will be appointed by us within 60 days after delivery of the notice of resignation or removal. The deposit agreement may be terminated at our direction or by the depositary if a period of 90 days has expired after the depositary has delivered to us written notice of its election to resign and a successor depositary has not been appointed. Upon termination of the deposit agreement, the depositary will discontinue the transfer of depositary receipts, will suspend the distribution of dividends to the holders thereof, and will not give any further notices (other than notice of such termination) or perform any further acts under the deposit agreement except that the depositary will continue to deliver Preferred Stock certificates, together with such dividends and distributions and the net proceeds of any sales of rights, preferences, privileges or other property in exchange for depositary receipts surrendered. Upon our request, the depositary shall deliver all books, records, certificates evidencing Preferred Stock, depositary receipts and other documents relating to the subject matter of the depositary agreement to us.

## DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS

We may issue rights to purchase debt securities, preferred stock, common stock or other securities that are being registered hereunder. These rights may be issued independently or together with any other security offered hereby and may or may not be transferable by the stockholder receiving the rights in such offering. In connection with any offering of such rights, we may enter into a standby arrangement with one or more underwriters or other purchasers pursuant to which the underwriters or other purchasers may be required to purchase any securities remaining unsubscribed for after such offering.

Each series of rights will be issued under a separate rights agreement which we will enter into with a bank or trust company, as rights agent, all as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. The rights agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the certificates relating to the rights and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust with any holders of rights certificates or beneficial owners of rights. We will file the rights agreement and the rights certificates relating to each series of rights with the SEC, and incorporate them by reference as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part on or before the time we issue a series of rights.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the specific terms of any offering of rights for which this prospectus is being delivered, including the following:

- the date of determining the stockholders entitled to the rights distribution;
- the number of rights issued or to be issued to each stockholder;
- the exercise price payable for each share of debt securities, preferred stock, common stock or other securities upon the exercise of the rights;
- the number and terms of the shares of debt securities, preferred stock, common stock or other securities which may be purchased per each right;
- the extent to which the rights are transferable;
- the date on which the holder's ability to exercise the rights shall commence, and the date on which the rights shall expire;
- the extent to which the rights may include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting or purchase arrangement entered into by us in connection with the offering of such rights; and
- any other terms of the rights, including the terms, procedures, conditions and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the rights.

The description in the applicable prospectus supplement of any rights that we may offer will not necessarily be complete and will be qualified in its entirety by reference to the applicable rights certificate, which will be filed with the SEC.

## DESCRIPTION OF UNITS

As specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may issue units consisting of one or more of the following: shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, debt securities, warrants, depositary shares, rights or any combination of such securities.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe:

- the terms of the units and of any of our Common Stock, Preferred Stock, debt securities, warrants, depositary shares or rights comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances the securities comprising the units may be traded separately;
- a description of the terms of any unit agreement governing the units;
- a description of the provisions for the payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units; and
- if applicable, a discussion of any material United States federal income tax considerations.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

In connection with particular offerings of our securities in the future, and if stated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the validity of those securities may be passed upon for us by Jackson Walker LLP and for any underwriters or agents by counsel named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

## **EXPERTS**

### **Independent Accountants**

Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, has audited our financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2023, as set forth in their report, which is incorporated by reference in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement. Our financial statements are incorporated by reference in reliance on Ernst & Young LLP's report, given on their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

### **Petroleum Engineers**

The information incorporated in this prospectus by reference to our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2023, relating to our natural gas, oil, and natural gas liquids reserves, has been so incorporated in reliance on the reports of Cawley, Gillespie and Associates, Inc., an independent petroleum engineering consulting firm, given on the authority of said firm as experts in petroleum engineering.

## INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to “incorporate by reference” the information we have filed with the SEC, which means that we can disclose important information to you without actually including the specific information in this prospectus by referring you to documents containing such information. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus and later information that we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information. Therefore, before you decide to invest in a particular offering under this shelf registration, you should always check for reports we may have filed with the SEC after the date of this prospectus. The following documents previously filed with the SEC are incorporated by reference in this prospectus:

- our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2023, filed with the SEC on March 12, 2024;
- the information specifically incorporated by reference into our Annual Report on Form 10-K for fiscal year ended September 30, 2022 from our Definitive Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A, filed with the SEC on January 23, 2023; and
- the description of our Capital Stock set forth in Exhibit 99.1 to our Current Report on Form 8-K12B, filed with the SEC on April 5, 2022, including any amendments or reports we file for purposes of updating that description.

All future documents, including those made after the date of the initial filing of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part and prior to effectiveness of such registration statement, filed with the SEC pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 and 15(d) of the Exchange Act (other than portions of these documents that are deemed to have been furnished and not filed in accordance with SEC rules, including Current Reports on Form 8-K furnished under Item 2.02 and Item 7.01) before the termination of the offering under this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement shall be deemed to be incorporated in this prospectus by reference and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of such documents.

Any statement contained in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement will be deemed to be modified or superseded to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document which also is or is deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus modifies or supersedes that statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement.

We undertake to provide without charge to any person, including any beneficial owner, to whom a copy of this prospectus is delivered, upon oral or written request of such person, a copy of any or all of the documents that have been incorporated by reference in this prospectus, excluding any exhibits to those documents unless the exhibit is specifically incorporated by reference as an exhibit in this prospectus. We will provide you with a copy of any of these filings (other than an exhibit to these filings, unless the exhibit is specifically incorporated by reference into the filing requested) at no cost, if you submit a request to us by writing or telephoning us at the following address or telephone number:

**PHX MINERALS INC.  
1320 SOUTH UNIVERSITY DRIVE, SUITE 720  
FORT WORTH, TEXAS 76107  
ATTENTION: CORPORATE SECRETARY  
TELEPHONE: (405) 948-1560**



---

**PROSPECTUS**

---

**\$100,000,000**

**Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Debt Securities  
Warrants  
Depository Shares  
Rights  
Units**

---

**, 2024**

---



**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN THE PROSPECTUS**

**Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following is a list of estimated expenses in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being registered, with the exception of underwriting discounts and commissions.

SEC Registration Fee .....	\$14,760
Printing costs .....	*
Legal fees and expenses .....	*
Accounting fees and expenses .....	*
Transfer agent fees .....	*
Miscellaneous .....	*
	*
	*
Total .....	*

\* Estimated fees and expenses are not presently known. The foregoing sets forth the general categories of fees and expenses (other than underwriting discounts and commissions) that we anticipate we will incur in connection with the offering of securities under this registration statement. Any estimate of the aggregate fees and expenses in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being offered will be included in the applicable prospectus supplement. All of the above expenses will be borne by the Company.

**Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the “DGCL”) sets forth circumstances under which directors, officers, employees and agents may be insured or indemnified against liability which they may incur in their capacities.

Article IX of our Bylaws provides that we shall indemnify any individual who is or was our director, officer or employee, and any individual who is or was our director, officer or employee and serves or served at our request as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise, against all expenses (including attorneys’ fees) actually and reasonably incurred by, or imposed upon, him or her in connection with any proceeding in which the individual is made a party as a result of his or her service in such capacity, if the individual acted in good faith and in a manner reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, our best interests and, with respect to any criminal proceeding, he or she had no reasonable cause to believe the conduct was unlawful, unless such indemnification would be prohibited by law. An individual will not be indemnified in connection with a proceeding by or in our right in which the individual was adjudged liable to us, unless the court in which the suit was brought determines the individual is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnification in view of all of the relevant circumstances.

We have entered into indemnity agreements with each of our executive officers and our directors. These agreements provide for indemnification to the extent permitted by the DGCL. We also maintain a policy of directors’ and officers’ liability insurance that insures our directors and officers against the cost of defense, settlement or payment of a judgment under certain circumstances.

**Item 16. Exhibits.**

The exhibits listed in the accompanying Exhibit Index are filed (except where otherwise indicated) as part of this registration statement.

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Exhibit Description</b>	<b>Form</b>	<b>File No.</b>	<b>Exhibit</b>	<b>Filing Date</b>
1.1**	Form of Underwriting Agreement				
2.1	Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of March 31, 2022, by and between PHX Minerals Inc., an Oklahoma corporation, and PHX Minerals (DE) Inc., a Delaware corporation	8-K12B	001-31759	2.1	4/5/2022
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation of PHX Minerals Inc., as amended	8-K12B	001-31759	3.1	4/5/2022
3.2	Amended and Restated By-Laws of PHX Minerals Inc.	10-K	001-31759	3.2	12/13/2022
4.1**	Form of Certificate of Designation of Preferred Stock				
4.2**	Form of Senior Note				
4.3*	Form of Senior Indenture				
4.4**	Form of Subordinated Note				
4.5*	Form of Subordinated Indenture				
4.6**	Form of Warrant Agreement				
4.7**	Form of Warrant Certificate				
4.8**	Form of Deposit Agreement				
4.9**	Form of Deposit Receipt				
4.10**	Form of Unit Agreement				
5.1*	Opinion of Jackson Walker LLP				
23.1*	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP				
23.2*	Consent of Cawley, Gillespie and Associates, Inc., Independent Petroleum Engineering Consultants				
23.3*	Consent of Jackson Walker LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1 to this Registration Statement)				
24.1*	Power of Attorney (included on the signature page of this Registration Statement)				
25.1***	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility of Trustee for the Indenture				
107*	Filing Fee Table				

\* Filed herewith.

\*\* To be filed, if necessary, subsequent to the effectiveness of this registration statement by an amendment to this registration statement or incorporated by reference to a Current Report on Form 8-K or other SEC filing in connection with an offering of securities.

\*\*\* To be filed in accordance with the requirements of Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or the Trust Indenture Act.

## Item 17. Undertakings.

- (a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:
- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
    - (i) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act;
    - (ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the SEC pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price, set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;
    - (iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

*provided, however*, that the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by paragraphs (a)(1)(i) and (a)(1)(ii) above may be contained in periodic reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the Company pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement or that are contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
- (4) [Paragraph omitted]
- (5) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:
  - (i) If the registrant is relying on Rule 430B:
    - (A) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and
    - (B) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the

offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date; or

- (ii) If the registrant is subject to Rule 430C, each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.

- (6) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities:

The undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
- (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
- (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
- (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

- (7)(b) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

- (h) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the

registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

- (i) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:
  - (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
  - (2) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (j) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Fort Worth, State of Texas, on March 12, 2024.

### PHX Minerals Inc.

/s/ Chad L. Stephens

Chad L. Stephens,  
Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer)

## POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints each of Chad L. Stephens and Ralph D'Amico, as his or her true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents, with full power of substitution and re-substitution for him and in his or her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to this registration statement, and any subsequent registration statements pursuant to Rule 462 of the Securities Act of 1933 and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the premises, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that each of said attorney-in-fact or his or her substitute or substitutes, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Signature	Capacity	Date
<u>/s/ Chad L. Stephens</u> Chad L. Stephens	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ Ralph D'Amico</u> Ralph D'Amico	Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ Chad D. True</u> Chad D. True	Senior Vice President of Accounting (Principal Accounting Officer)	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ Mark T. Behrman</u> Mark T. Behrman	Director	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ Glen A. Brown</u> Glen A. Brown	Director	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ Lee M. Canaan</u> Lee M. Canaan	Director	March 12, 2024

<b>Signature</b>	<b>Capacity</b>	<b>Date</b>
<u>/s/ Peter B. Delaney</u> Peter B. Delaney	Director	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ Steven L. Packebush</u> Steven L. Packebush	Director	March 12, 2024
<u>/s/ John H. Pinkerton</u> John H. Pinkerton	Director	March 12, 2024

**PHX MINERALS INC.,**

**as Issuer**

**and**

\_\_\_\_\_ ,

**as Trustee**

**SENIOR INDENTURE**

**Dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_**

---



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
1.1 Definitions	1
1.2 Compliance Certificates and Opinions	7
1.3 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	7
1.4 Acts of Holders; Record Dates	8
1.5 Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company	10
1.6 Notice to Holders; Waiver	10
1.7 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	11
1.8 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	11
1.9 Successors and Assigns	11
1.10 Separability Clause	11
1.11 Benefits of Indenture	11
1.12 Governing Law	11
1.13 Legal Holidays	11
1.14 No Recourse Against Others	12
1.15 Indenture May Be Executed in Counterparts	12
ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS	12
2.1 Forms Generally	12
2.2 Form of Face of Security	12
2.3 Form of Reverse of Security	14
2.4 [Intentionally Omitted]	17
2.5 Form of Legend for Global Securities	17
2.6 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	18
2.7 Form of Conversion Notice	18
ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES	19
3.1 Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	19
3.2 Denominations	21
3.3 Temporary Securities	21
3.4 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	22
3.5 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	22
3.6 Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved	24
3.7 Persons Deemed Owners	25
ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	26
4.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	26
4.2 Application of Trust Funds	27
ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES	27
5.1 Events of Default	27
5.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	28
5.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	29
5.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	30
5.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	30
5.6 Application of Funds Collected	30
5.7 Limitation on Suits	31
5.8 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	31

5.9	Restoration of Rights and Remedies	31
5.10	Rights and Remedies Cumulative	32
5.11	Delay or Omission Not Waiver	32
5.12	Control by Holders	32
5.13	Waiver of Past Defaults	32
5.14	Undertaking for Costs	32
5.15	Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws	33
ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE		33
6.1	Certain Duties and Responsibilities	33
6.2	Notice of Defaults	33
6.3	Certain Rights of Trustee	33
6.4	Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	34
6.5	May Hold Securities	34
6.6	Money Held in Trust	34
6.7	Compensation and Reimbursement	34
6.8	Conflicting Interests	35
6.9	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	35
6.10	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	35
6.11	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	36
6.12	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	37
6.13	Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	38
6.14	Appointment of Authenticating Agent	38
ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY		39
7.1	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	39
7.2	Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	39
7.3	Reports by Trustee	40
7.4	Reports by Company	40
ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE		40
8.1	Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	40
8.2	Successor Substituted	41
ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		41
9.1	Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	41
9.2	Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders	42
9.3	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	43
9.4	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	43
9.5	Conformity With Trust Indenture Act	43
9.6	Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	43
ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS		44
10.1	Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest	44
10.2	Maintenance of Office or Agency	44
10.3	Funds for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust	44
10.4	Statement by Officers as to Default	45
10.5	Existence	46
10.6	Maintenance of Properties	46

10.7	Payment of Taxes and Other Claims	46
10.8	Maintenance of Insurance	46
10.9	Waiver of Certain Covenants	47
ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES		47
11.1	Applicability of Article	47
11.2	Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	47
11.3	Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed	47
11.4	Notice of Redemption	48
11.5	Deposit of Redemption Price	49
11.6	Securities Payable on Redemption Date	49
11.7	Securities Redeemed in Part	49
ARTICLE TWELVE DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE		50
12.1	Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	50
12.2	Defeasance and Discharge	50
12.3	Covenant Defeasance	50
12.4	Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	51
12.5	Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions	52
12.6	Reinstatement	53
ARTICLE THIRTEEN SINKING FUNDS		53
13.1	Applicability of Article	53
13.2	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	53
13.3	Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	54

**PHX MINERALS INC.**

**RECONCILIATION AND TIE OF CERTAIN SECTIONS OF THIS INDENTURE  
RELATING TO SECTIONS 3.10 THROUGH 3.18, INCLUSIVE, OF THE TRUST  
INDENTURE ACT OF 1939:**

<u>TRUST INDENTURE ACT SECTION</u>	<u>INDENTURE SECTION</u>
Section 310 (a)(1)	6.9
(a)(2)	6.9
(a)(3)	Not Applicable
(a)(4)	Not Applicable
(b)	6.8
	6.10
Section 311 (a)	6.13
(b)	6.13
Section 312 (a)	7.1
	7.2
(b)	7.2
(c)	7.2
Section 313 (a)	7.3
(b)	7.3
(c)	7.3
(d)	7.3
Section 314 (a)	7.4
(a)(4)	1.1
	10.4
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	1.2
(c)(2)	1.2
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	1.2
Section 315 (a)	6.1
(b)	6.2
(c)	6.1
(d)	6.1
(e)	5.14
Section 316 (a)	1.1
(a)(1)(A)	5.2
	5.12

	(a)(1)(B)	5.13
	(a)(2)	Not Applicable
	(b)	5.8
	(c)	1.4
Section 317	(a)(1)	5.3
	(a)(2)	5.4
	(b)	10.3
Section 318	(a)	1.7

NOTE: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

## SENIOR INDENTURE

INDENTURE, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, among PHX Minerals Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (herein called the “Company”), having its principal office at 1320 South University Drive, Suite 720, Fort Worth, Texas 76107 and \_\_\_\_\_, a [entity type] duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of [State of Incorporation], as Trustee (herein called the “Trustee”).

### RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured debentures, bonds, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “Securities”), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, for and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

### ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

#### 1.1 Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted at the date of this instrument;
- (4) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article” or a “Section” refers to an Article or a Section, as the case may be, of this Indenture; and

(5) the words “herein”, “hereof”, “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Act,” when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.4.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing; provided that direct or indirect beneficial ownership of 10% or more of the Voting Stock of a Person shall be deemed to be control.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to Section 6.14 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“Board of Directors” means, with respect to the Company, either the board of directors of the Company or any committee of that board duly authorized to act for it in respect hereof.

“Board Resolution” means, with respect to the Company, a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, as the case may be, to have been duly adopted by its Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” when used with respect to any Place of Payment, means each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday which is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“Capital Stock” of any Person means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock or other equity participations, including partnership interests, whether general or limited, of such Person.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” means the common stock, par value \$0.01666 per share, of the Company as the same exists at the date of execution and delivery of this Indenture or other Capital Stock of the Company into which such common stock is converted, reclassified or changed from time to time.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“Company Request” or “Company Order” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by its Non-Executive Chairman, its President or a Vice President, and by its Chief Executive Officer, Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Conversion Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to convert any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be administered, such office being located on the date hereof at \_\_\_\_\_.

“Corporation” means a corporation, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company or business trust.

“Covenant Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 12.3.

“Debt” of any Person at any date means any obligation created, assumed or guaranteed by such Person for the repayment of borrowed money.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 3.7.

“Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 12.2.

“Depository” means, with respect to Securities of any series issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as Depository for such Securities as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 5.1.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Expiration Date” has the meaning specified in Section 1.4.

“Global Security” means a Security that evidences all or part of the Securities of any series and bears the legend set forth in Section 2.5 (or such legend as may be specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities).

“Holder” means a Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “Indenture” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.1.



“Interest,” when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Interest Payment Date,” when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Investment Company Act” means the Investment Company Act of 1940 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“Notice of Default” means a written notice of the kind specified in Section 5.1(5).

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Non-Executive Chairman, the President or a Vice President, and by the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company, as the case may be, and delivered to the Trustee. One of the officers signing an Officers’ Certificate given pursuant to Section 10.4 shall be the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company.

“Opinion of Counsel” means, as to the Company, a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel for the Company and who shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.2.

“Outstanding,” when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (1) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (2) Securities for whose payment or redemption funds in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;
- (3) Securities as to which Defeasance has been effected pursuant to Section 12.2; and
- (4) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 3.6 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have

been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company; provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action hereunder as of any date, (A) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof which would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof to such date pursuant to Section 5.2, (B) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Security is not determinable, the principal amount of such Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount as specified or determined as contemplated by Section 3.1, (C) the principal amount of a Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the U.S. dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner provided as contemplated by Section 3.1, of the principal amount of such Security (or, in the case of a Security described in clause (A) or (B) above, of the amount determined as provided in such clause), and (D) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, only Securities which the Trustee knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

“Paying Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“Place of Payment,” when used with respect to the Securities of any series, means the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series are payable as specified as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.6 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

“Redemption Date,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Price,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“Regular Record Date” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Securities of any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Securities” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Security Register” and “Security Registrar” have the respective meanings specified in Section 3.5.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 3.7.

“Stated Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” of any Person means (1) a corporation more than 50% of the combined voting power of the outstanding Voting Stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or by such Person and one or more Subsidiaries thereof or (2) any other Person (other than a corporation) in which such Person, or one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries thereof, directly or indirectly, has at least a majority ownership and power to direct the policies, management and affairs thereof.

“Trust Indenture Act” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “Trust Indenture Act” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“U.S. Government Obligation” has the meaning specified in Section 12.4.

“Vice President” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”.

“Voting Stock” of any Person means Capital Stock of such Person which ordinarily has voting power for the election of directors (or persons performing similar functions) of such Person, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of securities has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

“Wholly Owned Subsidiary” of any Person means a Subsidiary of such Person all of the outstanding Capital Stock of which (other than directors’ qualifying shares) shall at the time be owned by such Person or by one or more Wholly Owned Subsidiaries of such Person or by such Person and one or more Wholly Owned Subsidiaries of such Person.

## **1.2 Compliance Certificates and Opinions.**

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee such certificates and opinions as may be required under the Trust Indenture Act. Each such certificate or opinion shall be given in the form of an Officers’ Certificate, if to be given by an officer of the Company or an Opinion of Counsel, if to be given by counsel, and shall comply with the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act and any other requirements set forth in this Indenture.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture shall include:

(1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

## **1.3 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.**

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are

erroneous. Any such certificate or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

#### **1.4 Acts of Holders; Record Dates.**

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the Holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any or all series may take action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any direction, notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action) the fact that at the time of taking any such action the Holders of such specified percentage have joined therein may be evidenced (a) by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by Holders in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing, (b) by the record of the Holders voting in favor thereof at any meeting of Holders duly called and held in accordance with procedures approved by the Trustee, (c) by a combination of such instrument or instruments and any such record of such a meeting of Holders or (d) in the case of Securities evidenced by a Global Security, by any electronic transmission or other message, whether or not in written format, that complies with the Depositary's applicable procedures. Such evidence (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the relevant Holders. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent or proxy shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 6.1) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

The Company may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to give, make or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders of Securities of such series, provided that the Company may not set a record date for, and the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to, the giving or making of any notice, declaration, request or direction referred to in the next paragraph. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to take the relevant action, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Company from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Company, at its own expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Trustee in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6. The Trustee may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to join in the giving or making of (i) any Notice of Default; (ii) any declaration of acceleration referred to in Section 5.2; (iii) any request to institute proceedings referred to in Section 5.7(2); or (iv) any direction referred to in Section 5.12, in each case with respect to Securities of such series. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Trustee from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Trustee, at the Company's expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Company in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6.

With respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which sets such record dates may designate any day as the "Expiration Date" and from time to time may change the Expiration Date to any earlier or later day; provided that no such change shall be effective unless notice of the proposed new Expiration Date is given to the other party hereto in writing, and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6, on or prior to the existing Expiration Date. If an Expiration Date is not designated with respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which set such record date shall be deemed to have initially designated the 180th day after such record date as the Expiration Date with respect thereto, subject to its right to change the Expiration Date as provided in this paragraph. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no Expiration Date shall be later than the 180th day after the applicable record date.

Without limiting the foregoing, a Holder entitled hereunder to take any action hereunder with regard to any particular Security may do so with regard to all or any part of the principal amount of such Security or by one or more duly appointed agents each of which may do so pursuant to such appointment with regard to all or any part of such principal amount.

**1.5 Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.**

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing in the English language to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Department; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing in the English language and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to the Company at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

**1.6 Notice to Holders; Waiver.**

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders. Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

**1.7 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.**

If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act which is required under the Trust Indenture Act to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the latter provision shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act which may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

**1.8 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.**

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

**1.9 Successors and Assigns.**

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

**1.10 Separability Clause.**

In case any provision in this Indenture or the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforce ability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

**1.11 Benefits of Indenture.**

Nothing in this Indenture or the Securities express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder and the Holders, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

**1.12 Governing Law.**

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of [New York].

**1.13 Legal Holidays.**

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, purchase date or Stated Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of the Securities (other than a provision of any Security which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section)) payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or purchase date, or at the Stated Maturity.



#### **1.14 No Recourse Against Others.**

No director, officer, employee, incorporator, stockholder, member, partner or trustee of the Company, as such, shall have any liability for any obligations of the Company under the Securities or this Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of, or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. By accepting a Security, each Holder shall be deemed to have waived and released all such liability. The waiver and release shall be a part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities. The waiver may not be effective to waive liabilities under the federal securities laws, and it is the view of the Commission that such a waiver is against public policy.

#### **1.15 Indenture May Be Executed in Counterparts.**

The parties may sign any number of copies of this Indenture, and each party hereto may sign any number of separate copies of this Indenture. Each signed copy shall be an original, but all of them together represent the same agreement. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and of signature pages by facsimile or PDF transmission shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture as to the parties hereto and may be used in lieu of the original Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile or PDF shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

## **ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS**

#### **2.1 Forms Generally.**

The Securities of each series shall be in substantially the form set forth in this Article, or in such other form as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or Depository therefor or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution thereof. If the form of Securities of any series is established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by Section 3.3 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

#### **2.2 Form of Face of Security.**

[Insert any legend required by the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations thereunder.]

PHX Minerals Inc.

No.

§

PHX Minerals Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of Delaware herein called the “Company,” which term includes any successor Person under the Indenture hereinafter referred to), for value received, hereby promises to pay to \_\_\_\_\_, or registered assigns, the principal sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars on \_\_\_\_\_ [if the Security is to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert—, and to pay interest thereon from \_\_\_\_\_ or from the most recent Interest Payment Date to which interest has been paid or duly provided for, semi-annually on \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ in each year, commencing \_\_\_\_\_, at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_% per annum, until the principal hereof is paid or made available for payment, provided that any principal and premium, and any such installment of interest, which is overdue shall bear interest at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_% per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment, and such interest shall be payable on demand. The interest so payable, and punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date will, as provided in such Indenture, be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, which shall be the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ (whether or not a Business Day), as the case may be, next preceding such Interest Payment Date. Any such interest not so punctually paid or duly provided for will forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on such Regular Record Date and may either be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest to be fixed by the Trustee, notice whereof shall be given to Holders of Securities of this series not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date, or be paid at any time in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which the Securities of this series may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, all as more fully provided in said Indenture].

[If the Security is not to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert—The principal of this Security shall not bear interest except in the case of a default in payment of principal upon acceleration, upon redemption or at Stated Maturity and in such case the overdue principal and any overdue premium shall bear interest at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_% per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue principal or premium shall be payable on demand. Any such interest on overdue principal or premium which is not paid on demand shall bear interest at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_% per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest on interest shall be legally enforceable), from the date of such demand until the amount so demanded is paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue interest shall be payable on demand.]

Payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and [if applicable, insert—any such] interest on this Security will be made at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in \_\_\_\_\_, in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts; provided, however, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Security set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee referred to on the reverse hereof by manual signature, this Security shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this instrument to be duly executed.

Dated:  
PHX Minerals Inc.  
By  
Attest:

### 2.3 Form of Reverse of Security.

This Security is one of a duly authorized issue of securities of the Company (herein called the "Securities"), issued and to be issued in one or more series under an Indenture, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_ (herein called the "Indenture", which term shall have the meaning assigned to it in such instrument), among the Company and \_\_\_\_\_, as Trustee (herein called the "Trustee", which term includes any successor trustee under the Indenture), and reference is hereby made to the Indenture for a statement of the respective rights, limitations of rights, duties and immunities thereunder of the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities and of the terms upon which the Securities are, and are to be, authenticated and delivered. This Security is one of the series designated on the face hereof [if applicable, insert - , limited in aggregate principal amount to \$ \_\_\_\_\_].

[If applicable, insert—The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days' notice by mail, [if applicable, insert—(1) on \_\_\_\_\_ in any year commencing with the year \_\_\_\_\_ and ending with the year \_\_\_\_\_ through operation of the sinking fund for this series at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount, and (2)] at any time [if applicable, insert—on or after \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the following Redemption Prices (expressed as percentages of the principal amount): If redeemed [if applicable, insert—on or before \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_%, and if redeemed] during the 12-month period beginning of the years indicated,

Year	Redemption Price	Year	Redemption Price
------	------------------	------	------------------

and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to \_\_\_\_\_% of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption [if applicable, insert— (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise)] with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

[If applicable, insert—The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ notice by mail, (1) on \_\_\_\_\_ in any year commencing with the year \_\_\_\_\_ and ending with the year \_\_\_\_\_ through operation of the sinking fund for this series at the Redemption Prices for redemption through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below, and (2) at any time [if applicable, insert—on or after \_\_\_\_\_], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the Redemption Prices for redemption otherwise than through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below: If redeemed during the 12-month period beginning of the years indicated, and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to \_\_\_\_\_% of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise) with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

Year	Redemption Price for Redemption Through Operation of the Sinking Fund	Redemption Price for Redemption Otherwise than Through Operation of the Sinking Fund
------	--	---

[If applicable, insert—Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may not, prior to \_\_\_\_\_, redeem any Securities of this series as contemplated by [if applicable, insert—clause (2) of] the preceding paragraph as a part of, or in anticipation of, any refunding operation by the application, directly or indirectly, of moneys borrowed having an interest cost to the Company (calculated in accordance with generally accepted financial practice) of less than \_\_\_\_\_% per annum.]

[If applicable, insert—The sinking fund for this series provides for the redemption on \_\_\_\_\_ in each year beginning with the year \_\_\_\_\_ and ending with the year \_\_\_\_\_ of [if applicable, insert—not less than \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (“mandatory sinking fund”) and not more than] \$ \_\_\_\_\_ aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series. Securities of this series acquired or redeemed by the Company otherwise than through [if applicable, insert—mandatory] sinking fund payments may be credited against subsequent [if applicable, insert—mandatory] sinking fund payments otherwise required to be made [if applicable, insert - , in the inverse order in which they become due].]

[If the Security is subject to redemption of any kind, insert—In the event of redemption of this Security in part only, a new Security or Securities of this series and of like tenor for the unredeemed portion hereof will be issued in the name of the Holder hereof upon the cancellation hereof.]

[If the Security is subject to conversion, insert—Subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder has the right to convert the principal amount of this Security into fully paid and nonassessable shares of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] of the Company at the initial conversion price per share of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (or \$ \_\_\_\_\_ in principal amount of Securities for each such share of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock]), or at the adjusted conversion price then in effect, if adjustment has been made as provided in the Indenture, upon surrender of the Security to the Conversion Agent, together with a fully executed notice in substantially the form attached hereto and, if required by the Indenture, an amount equal to accrued interest payable on this Security.]

[If applicable, insert—The Indenture contains provisions for Defeasance at any time of [the entire indebtedness of this Security] [or] [certain restrictive covenants and Events of Default with respect to this Security] [, in each case] upon compliance with certain conditions set forth in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is not an Original Issue Discount Security, insert—If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, the principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is an Original Issue Discount Security, insert—If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, an amount of principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture. Such amount shall be equal to—insert formula for determining the amount. Upon payment (i) of the amount of principal so declared due and payable and (ii) of interest on any overdue principal, premium and interest (in each case to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), all of the Company's obligations in respect of the payment of the principal of and premium and interest, if any, on the Securities of this series shall terminate.]

The Indenture permits, with certain exceptions as therein provided, the amendment thereof and the modification of the rights and obligations of the Company and the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each series to be affected under the Indenture at any time by the Company and the Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of each series to be affected. The Indenture also contains provisions permitting the Holders of specified percentages in principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time Outstanding, on behalf of the Holders of all Securities of such series, to waive compliance by the Company with certain provisions of the Indenture and certain past defaults under the Indenture and their consequences. Any such consent or waiver by the Holder of this Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders of this Security and of any Security issued upon the registration of transfer hereof or in exchange herefor or in lieu hereof, whether or not notation of such consent or waiver is made upon this Security.

As provided in and subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder of this Security shall not have the right to institute any proceeding with respect to the Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee or for any other remedy thereunder, unless such Holder shall have previously given the Trustee written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of this series, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Securities of this series at the time Outstanding shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default as Trustee and offered the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity, and the Trustee shall not have received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of Securities of this series at the time Outstanding a direction inconsistent with such request, and shall have failed to institute any such proceeding, for 60 days after receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity. The foregoing shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Holder of this Security for the enforcement of any payment of principal hereof or any premium or interest hereon on or after the respective due dates expressed herein [if applicable, insert—or the right to convert this Security in accordance with its terms].

No reference herein to the Indenture and no provision of this Security or of the Indenture shall alter or impair the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security at the times, place and rate, and in the coin or currency, herein prescribed [if applicable, insert—and to convert such Security in accordance with its terms].

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Security is registrable in the Security Register, upon surrender of this Security for registration of transfer at the office or agency of the Company in any place where the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security are payable, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed by, the Holder hereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Securities of this series and of like tenor, of authorized denominations and for the same aggregate principal amount, will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Securities of this series are issuable only in registered form [without coupons] in denominations of \$\_\_\_\_\_ and any integral multiple thereof. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, Securities of this series are exchangeable for a like aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series and of like tenor of a different authorized denomination, as requested by the Holder surrendering the same.

No service charge shall be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

Prior to due presentment of this Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name this Security is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, whether or not this Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any such agent shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

All terms used in this Security which are defined in the Indenture shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Indenture.

#### **2.4 [Intentionally Omitted].**

#### **2.5 Form of Legend for Global Securities.**

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for the Securities evidenced thereby, every Global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

**2.6 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.**

The Trustee's certificates of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

As Trustee

By:

Authorized Officer

**2.7 Form of Conversion Notice.**

Each convertible Security shall have attached thereto, or set forth on the reverse of the Security, a notice of conversion in substantially the following form:

Conversion Notice

To: PHX Minerals Inc.

The undersigned owner of this Security hereby: (i) irrevocably exercises the option to convert this Security, or the portion hereof below designated, for shares of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] of PHX Minerals Inc. in accordance with the terms of the Indenture referred to in this Security and (ii) directs that such shares of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] deliverable upon the conversion, together with any check in payment for fractional shares and any Security(ies) representing any unconverted principal amount hereof, be issued and delivered to the registered holder hereof unless a different name has been indicated below. If shares are to be delivered registered in the name of a person other than the undersigned, the undersigned will pay all transfer taxes payable with respect thereto. Any amount required to be paid by the undersigned on account of interest accompanies this Security.

Dated

Signature

Fill in for registration of shares if to be delivered, and of Securities if to be issued, otherwise than to and in the name of the registered holder.

---

Social Security or other Taxpayer Identification Number

---

(Name)

(Please print name and address)

---

Principal amount to be converted: (if less than all)

\$

Signature Guarantee\*

---

\* Participant in a recognized Signature Guarantee Medallion Program (or other signature acceptable to the Trustee).

**ARTICLE THREE  
THE SECURITIES**

**3.1 Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.**

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and, subject to Section 3.3, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series, (1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from Securities of any other series); (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 9.6 or 11.7 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 3.3, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder); (3) [Intentionally Omitted]; (4) the Person to whom any interest on a Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest; (5) the date or dates on which the principal of any Securities of the series is payable; (6) the rate or rates at which any Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which any such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any such interest payable on any Interest Payment Date; (7) the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable; (8) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to redeem the Securities shall be evidenced; (9) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase any Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of the Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation; (10) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple



thereof, the denominations in which any Securities of the series shall be issuable; (11) if the amount of principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index or pursuant to a formula, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined; (12) if other than the currency of the United States of America, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for any purpose, including for purposes of the definition of “Outstanding” in Section 1.1; (13) if the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series is to be payable, at the election of the Company or the Holder thereof, in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are stated to be payable, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on such Securities as to which such election is made shall be payable, the periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amount so payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined); (14) if other than the entire principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.2; (15) if the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of any Securities of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the Stated Maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such Securities as of any such date for any purpose thereunder or hereunder, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any Maturity other than the Stated Maturity or which shall be deemed to be Outstanding as of any date prior to the Stated Maturity (or, in any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined); (16) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or any specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 12.2 or Section 12.3 or both such Sections and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced; (17) if applicable, that any Securities of the series shall be issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and, in such case, the respective Depositories for such Global Securities, the form of any legend or legends which shall be borne by any such Global Security in addition to or in lieu of that set forth in Section 2.5 and any circumstances in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in clause (2) of the last paragraph of Section 3.5 in which any such Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and any transfer of such Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name or names of Persons other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof; (18) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 5.2; (19) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Article Ten which applies to Securities of the series; (20) whether the Securities of the series will be convertible into Common Stock [or Preferred Stock] (or cash in lieu thereof) and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such conversion will be effected; and (21) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by Section 9.1(5)).

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution referred to above and (subject to Section 3.3) set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in the Officers’ Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

### **3.2 Denominations.**

The Securities of each series shall be issuable only in registered form without coupons and only in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 3.1. In the absence of any such specified denomination with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

### **3.3 Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.**

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Non-Executive Chairman, its President or one of its Vice Presidents. If its corporate seal is reproduced thereon, then it shall be attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If the form or terms of the Securities of the series have been established by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions as permitted by Sections 2.1 and 3.1, in authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.1) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating, (1) if the form of such Securities has been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 2.1, that such form has been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; (2) if the terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 3.1, that such terms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and (3) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles.

If such form or terms have been so established, the Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner which is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.1 and of the preceding paragraph, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 3.1 or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to such preceding paragraph at or prior to the authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 3.9, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

### **3.4 Temporary Securities.**

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor one or more definitive Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series and tenor.

### **3.5 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.**

The Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee a register (the register maintained in such office and in any other office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes collectively referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities and of transfers of Securities. The Trustee is hereby appointed "Security Registrar" for the purpose of registering Securities and transfers of Securities as herein provided.

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of a series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

At the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.4, 9.6, 11.7 or otherwise not involving any transfer.

If the Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, the Company shall not be required (A) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of any such Securities selected for redemption under Section 11.3 and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (B) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any Security being redeemed in part.

The provisions of clauses (1), (2), (3) and (4) below shall apply only to Global Securities: (1) each Global Security authenticated under this Indenture shall be registered in the name of the Depositary designated for such Global Security or a nominee thereof and delivered to such Depositary or a nominee thereof or custodian therefor, and each such Global Security shall constitute a single Security for all purposes of this Indenture; (2) notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, no Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities

registered, and no transfer of a Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any Person other than the Depositary for such Global Security or a nominee thereof unless (A) such Depositary (i) has notified the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depositary for such Global Security or (ii) has ceased to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and in either case the Company fails to appoint a successor Depositary within 90 days, (B) there shall have occurred and be continuing an Event of Default with respect to such Global Security and the Depositary shall have notified the Trustee of its decision to exchange such Global Security for Securities in certificated form, (C) subject to the rules of the Depositary, the Company shall have elected to terminate the book-entry system through the Depositary or (D) there shall exist such circumstances, if any, in addition to or in lieu of the foregoing as have been specified for this purpose as contemplated by Section 3.1; (3) subject to clause (2) above, any exchange of a Global Security for other Securities may be made in whole or in part, and all Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security or any portion thereof shall be registered in such names as the Depositary for such Global Security shall direct; and (4) every Security authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for or in lieu of, a Global Security or any portion thereof, whether pursuant to this Section, Section 3.4, 3.6, 9.6 or 11.7 or otherwise, shall be authenticated and delivered in the form of, and shall be, a Global Security, unless such Security is registered in the name of a Person other than the Depositary for such Global Security or a nominee thereof.

### **3.6 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.**

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless from any loss that any of them may suffer if a Security is replaced, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable or is to be converted, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay or authorize the conversion of such Security (without surrender thereof save in the case of a mutilated Security).

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement, payment or conversion of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

### **3.7 Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.**

Except as otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.1 with respect to any series of Securities, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given to each Holder of Securities of such series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so mailed, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2); and

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

### **3.8 Persons Deemed Owners.**

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 3.7) any interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

### **3.9 Cancellation.**

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, purchase, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section 3.9, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of in accordance with its standard procedures, unless as directed by a Company Order.

### **Computation of Interest.**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for Securities of any series, interest on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

## **ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE**

### **4.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.**

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to the Securities of any series, and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when (1) either (A) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.6 and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment funds have theretofore been

deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 10.3) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or (B) all such Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (i) have become due and payable, or (ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or (iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose funds in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be; (2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Securities of such series; and (3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 6.7, the obligations of the Company with respect to the Securities of such series under Sections 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 10.2 and 10.3, any surviving rights of conversion, the obligations of the Trustee to any Authenticating Agent under Section 6.14 and, if funds shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 4.2 and the last paragraph of Section 10.3 shall survive.

#### **4.2 Application of Trust Funds.**

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.3, all funds deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.1 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and any premium and interest for whose payment such funds have been deposited with the Trustee.

### **ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES**

#### **5.1 Events of Default.**

“Event of Default”, wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body): (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or (2) default in the payment of the principal of or any premium on any Security of that series at its Maturity; or (3) default in



the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of a Security of that series; or (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant of the Company in Article Eight of this Indenture; or (5) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or (6) any Debt of the Company is not paid within any applicable grace period after final maturity or is accelerated by the holders thereof because of a default; or (7) any judgment or decree for the payment of money is entered against the Company with respect to the Securities of such series, remains outstanding for a period of 60 consecutive days following the entry of such judgment or decree and is not discharged, waived or the execution thereof stayed; or (8) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company with respect to the Securities of such series, in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company, under any applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or (9) the commencement by the Company of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it or them to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it or them, or the filing by it or them of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it or them to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it or them in writing of its or their inability to pay its or their debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company in furtherance of any such action; or (10) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

## **5.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.**

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 5.1(8) or 5.1(9)) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may declare the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount

Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount), together with any accrued and unpaid interest thereon, shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 5.1(8) or 5.1(9) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof), together with any accrued and unpaid interest thereon, shall automatically, and without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the funds due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if (1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay (A) all overdue interest on all Securities of that series, (B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and any interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, (C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and (D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel; and (2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that series which has become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

### **5.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.**

The Company covenants that if (1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal and premium and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

#### **5.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.**

In case of any judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, or the property or creditors of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise, to take any and all actions authorized under the Trust Indenture Act in order to have claims of the Holders and the Trustee allowed in any such proceeding. In particular, the Trustee shall be authorized to collect and receive any monies or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.7.

No provision of this Indenture shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding; provided, however, that the Trustee may, on behalf of the Holders, vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and be a member of a creditors' or other similar committee.

#### **5.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.**

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

#### **5.6 Application of Funds Collected.**

Any funds collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such funds on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid: FIRST: to the payment of all amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.7; SECOND: to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such funds have been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively; and THIRD: the balance, if any, to the Company or to such other Person as a court of competent jurisdiction shall direct.

## **5.7 Limitation on Suits.**

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series; (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder; (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request; (4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of security or indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

## **5.8 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.**

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 3.7) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or offer by the Company to purchase the Securities pursuant to the terms of this Indenture, on the Redemption Date or purchase date, as applicable) and, if applicable, to convert such Security in accordance with its terms, and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such right, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

## **5.9 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.**

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

#### **5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.**

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 3.6, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

#### **5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver.**

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

#### **5.12 Control by Holders.**

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture, and (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

#### **5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults.**

The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default (1) in the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of such series (including any Security which is required to have been purchased by the Company pursuant to an offer to purchase by the Company made pursuant to the terms of this Indenture), or (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

#### **5.14 Undertaking for Costs.**

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that neither this Section nor the Trust Indenture Act shall be deemed to authorize any court to require such an undertaking or to make such an assessment in any suit instituted by the Company.

### **5.15 Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws.**

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any usury, stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

## **ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE**

### **6.1 Certain Duties and Responsibilities.**

The duties and responsibilities of the Trustee shall be as expressly set forth in this Indenture and as provided by the Trust Indenture Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it. Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

### **6.2 Notice of Defaults.**

If a default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 5.1(5) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term “default” means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

### **6.3 Certain Rights of Trustee.**

Subject to the provisions of Section 6.1: (1) the Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties; (2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order, and any resolution of the Board of Directors shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution; (3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers’ Certificate; (4) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written

advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon; (5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction; (6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney; and (7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

#### **6.4 Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.**

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

#### **6.5 May Hold Securities.**

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 6.8 and 6.13, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

#### **6.6 Money Held in Trust.**

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

#### **6.7 Compensation and Reimbursement.**

The Company agrees (1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust); (2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its

agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to its negligence or bad faith; and (3) to indemnify the Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

#### **6.8 Conflicting Interests.**

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture. To the extent permitted by such Act, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest by virtue of being a trustee under this Indenture with respect to Securities of more than one series.

#### **6.9 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.**

There shall at all times be one (and only one) Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of each series, which may be Trustee hereunder for Securities of one or more other series. Each Trustee shall be a Person that is eligible pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act to act as such, and has a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If any such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section and to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

#### **6.10 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.**

No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 6.11.

The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 6.11 shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.



If at any time: (1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 6.8 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months; or (2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.9 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Holder; or (3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (A) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (B) subject to Section 5.14, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 6.11. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 6.11, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders and accepted appointment in the manner required by Section 6.11, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to all Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided in Section 1.6. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

#### **6.11 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.**

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee; and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates.

Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in the first or second preceding paragraph, as the case may be.

No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article Six.

#### **6.12 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.**

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such Person shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. As soon as practicable, the successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to the Company and the Holders of the Securities then Outstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

### **6.13 Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.**

If and when the Trustee shall be or become a creditor of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act regarding the collection of claims against the Company or any such other obligor.

### **6.14 Appointment of Authenticating Agent.**

The Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue and upon exchange, registration of transfer, conversion or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 3.6, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a Person organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any Person into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such Person shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable

to the Company and shall give notice of such appointment in the manner provided in Section 1.6 to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Trustee agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section, and the Trustee shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 6.7.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternative certificate of authentication in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_

As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_

As Authenticating Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Authorized Officer

**ARTICLE SEVEN  
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY**

**7.1 Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.**

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee with respect to the Securities of each series: (1) not more than 10 days after each record date with respect to the payment of interest, if any, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of such series as of such record date, and (2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; excluding from any such list names and addresses received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar.

**7.2 Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.**

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 7.1 and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.1 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and privileges of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any agent of any of them shall be held accountable by reason of any disclosure of information as to names and addresses of Holders made pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act.

### **7.3 Reports by Trustee.**

The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto.

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will notify the Trustee when any Securities are listed on any stock exchange.

### **7.4 Reports by Company.**

The Company shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is filed with the Commission.

## **ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE**

### **8.1 Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.**

The Company shall not, in a single transaction or a series of related transactions, consolidate with or merge into any other Person or permit any other Person to consolidate with or merge into the Company or, directly or indirectly, transfer, convey, sell, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets, unless: (1) in a transaction in which the Company does not survive or in which the Company transfers, conveys, sells, leases or otherwise disposes of all or substantially all of its assets, the successor entity (for purposes of this Article Eight, a "Successor Company") shall be a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on all the Securities and the performance or observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed; (2) immediately before and after giving pro forma effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness which becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of such

transaction as having been incurred by the Company or such Subsidiary at the time of such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; (3) if, as a result of any such consolidation or merger or such transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition, properties or assets of the Company would become subject to a mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest or other encumbrance which would not be permitted by this Indenture, the Company or the Successor Company, as the case may be, shall take such steps as shall be necessary effectively to secure the Securities equally and ratably with (or prior to) all indebtedness secured thereby; (4) any other conditions provided pursuant to Section 3.1 with respect to the Securities of a series are satisfied; and (5) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

## **8.2 Successor Substituted.**

Upon any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, any other Person or any transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company in accordance with Section 8.1, the Successor Company shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

## **ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES**

### **9.1 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.**

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes: (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities, as the case may be; or (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or (3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); or (4) to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in bearer form, registrable or not registrable as to principal, and with or without interest coupons, or to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in uncertificated form; or (5) to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture in respect of one or more series of Securities, provided that any such

addition, change or elimination (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefit of such provision nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision or (B) shall become effective only when there is no such Security Outstanding; or (6) to secure the Securities; or (7) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 2.1 and 3.1; or (8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 6.11; or (9) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein; or (10) to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture, provided that such action pursuant to this clause (10) shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect.

## **9.2 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders.**

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby: (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.2, or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of (a) any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date or in the case of an offer to purchase Securities which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, on or after the applicable purchase date) or (b) any conversion right with respect to any Security, or modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to the conversion of the Securities, in a manner adverse to the Holders, other than as provided in this Indenture; or (2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture; or (3) modify any of the provisions of this Section, Section 5.13 or Section 10.9, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section and Section 10.9, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 6.11 and 9.1(8); or (4) following the making of an offer to purchase Securities from any Holder which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to such offer to purchase in a manner adverse to such Holder.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

After a supplemental indenture under this Section 9.2 requiring the consent of the Holders of any series of Securities is approved, the Company shall mail to Holders of that series of Securities a notice briefly describing any amendment or supplement hereto effected by such supplemental indenture. The failure to give such notice to any such Holders, or any defect therein, shall not impair or affect the validity of any amendment or supplement hereto effected by such supplemental indenture with respect to other Holders.

### **9.3 Execution of Supplemental Indentures.**

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.1) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

### **9.4 Effect of Supplemental Indentures.**

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

### **9.5 Conformity With Trust Indenture Act.**

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act.

### **9.6 Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.**

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and such new Securities may be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.



## ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS

### **10.1 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.**

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities and this Indenture. Principal, premium, if any, and interest shall be considered paid on the date due if the Paying Agent, if other than the Company or a Subsidiary thereof, holds as of 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on the due date funds deposited with it in immediately available funds and designated for and sufficient to pay all principal, premium, if any, and interest then due.

### **10.2 Maintenance of Office or Agency.**

The Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment or, if applicable, for conversion, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

### **10.3 Funds for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust.**

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium and interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay such amount, such sum to be held as provided by the Trust Indenture Act, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent for any series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will (1) comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act applicable to it as a Paying Agent and (2) during the continuance of any default by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of that series in the making of any payment in respect of the Securities of that series, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent for payment in respect of the Securities of that series.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such funds.

Any funds deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust funds, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in a newspaper published in the English language, customarily published on each Business Day and of general circulation in [The City of New York, New York], notice that such funds remain unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such funds then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

#### **10.4 Statement by Officers as to Default.**

(a) The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 90 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company ending after the date hereof, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signers thereof the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which it may have knowledge.

(b) The Company shall, so long as any series of Securities is Outstanding, deliver to the Trustee, as soon as possible and in any event within five days after the Company becomes aware of the occurrence of an Event of Default or an event which, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute an Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate setting forth the details of such Event of Default or default, and the action which the Company proposes to take with respect thereto.

#### **10.5 Existence.**

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect the existence, rights (charter and statutory) and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if it shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

#### **10.6 Maintenance of Properties.**

The Company will cause all properties used or useful in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary to be maintained and kept in good condition, repair and working order (reasonable wear and tear excepted) and supplied with all necessary equipment and will cause to be made all necessary repairs, renewals, replacements, betterments and improvements thereof, all as in the judgment of the Company may be necessary so that the business carried on in connection therewith may be properly and advantageously conducted at all times; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the Company from discontinuing the operation or maintenance of any of such properties if such discontinuance is, in the judgment of the Company, desirable in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary and not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

#### **10.7 Payment of Taxes and Other Claims.**

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or any Subsidiary or upon the income, profits or property of the Company or any Subsidiary, and (2) all lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies which, if unpaid, might by law become a lien upon the property of the Company or any Subsidiary; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

#### **10.8 Maintenance of Insurance.**

The Company shall, and shall cause its Subsidiaries to, keep at all times all of their properties which are of an insurable nature insured against loss or damage with insurers believed by the Company to be responsible to the extent that property of similar character is usually so insured by corporations similarly situated and owning like properties in accordance with good business practice.

### **10.9 Waiver of Certain Covenants.**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for Securities of such series, the Company may, with respect to the Securities of any series, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any of Sections 10.5 through 10.8 or in any covenant provided pursuant to Section 3.1(21), 9.1(2) or 9.1(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

## **ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES**

### **11.1 Applicability of Article.**

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities) in accordance with this Article.

### **11.2 Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.**

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities.

In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all the Securities of any series (including any such redemption affecting only a single Security), the Company shall, at least five Business Days prior to giving notice of such redemption (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date, of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

### **11.3 Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed.**

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed (unless all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed or unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, (i) in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which such Securities are listed, if such Securities are listed on any national securities exchange, and (ii) if such Securities are not so listed, on a pro rata basis, by lot or by such other method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of a portion of the principal

amount of any Security of such series, provided that the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of any Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security. If less than all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed (unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series and specified tenor not previously called for redemption in accordance with the preceding sentence.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption as aforesaid and, in case of any Securities selected for partial redemption as aforesaid, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

The provisions of the two preceding paragraphs shall not apply with respect to any redemption affecting only a single Security, whether such Security is to be redeemed in whole or in part. In the case of any such redemption in part, the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of the Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed. If any Security selected for partial redemption is surrendered for conversion after such selection, the converted portion of such Security shall be deemed (so far as may be) to be the portion selected for redemption. Upon any redemption of less than all the Securities of a series, for purposes of selection for redemption the Company and the Trustee may treat as Outstanding Securities surrendered for conversion during the period of 15 days next preceding the mailing of a notice of redemption, and need not treat as Outstanding any Security authenticated and delivered during such period in exchange for the unconverted portion of any Security converted in part during such period.

#### **11.4 Notice of Redemption.**

Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register; provided, however, notice of redemption may be given more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date if the notice is issued in connection with a satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Article Four.

All notices of redemption shall state: (1) the Redemption Date, (2) the Redemption Price, if then determinable and otherwise the method of its determination, (3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of more than a single Security are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption of any such Securities, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed and, if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of a single Security are to be redeemed, the principal amount of the particular Security to be redeemed, (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date, (5) the place or places where each such Security is to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price, (6) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case; and (7) if applicable, the conversion price then in effect and the date on which the right to convert such Securities will expire.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company and shall be irrevocable. If any Security called for redemption is converted pursuant hereto, any funds deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent or so segregated and held in trust for the redemption of such Security shall be paid to the Company upon delivery of a Company Request to the Trustee or such Paying Agent, or, if then held by the Company, shall be discharged from such trust.

#### **11.5 Deposit of Redemption Price.**

Prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.3) an amount of funds sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

#### **11.6 Securities Payable on Redemption Date.**

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1, installments of interest whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.7.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security.

#### **11.7 Securities Redeemed in Part.**

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

**ARTICLE TWELVE**  
**DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE**

**12.1 Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.**

The Company may elect, at its option at any time, to have Section 12.2 or Section 12.3 applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, designated pursuant to Section 3.1 as being defeasible pursuant to such Section 12.2 or 12.3, in accordance with any applicable requirements provided pursuant to Section 3.1 and upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article. Any such election shall be evidenced in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities.

**12.2 Defeasance and Discharge.**

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations as provided in this Section on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 12.4 are satisfied (herein called "Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Securities and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), subject to the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (1) the rights of Holders of such Securities to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 12.4 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities when payments are due, or, if applicable, to convert such Securities in accordance with their terms; (2) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 10.2 and 10.3, and, if applicable, its obligations with respect to the conversion of such Securities; (3) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder; and (4) this Article. Subject to compliance with this Article, the Company may exercise its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option (if any) to have Section 12.3 applied to such Securities.

**12.3 Covenant Defeasance.**

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, (1) the Company shall be released from its obligations under Section 8.1(3), Sections 10.5 through 10.8, inclusive, and any covenants provided pursuant to Section 3.1(21), 9.1(2) or 9.1(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities; and (2) the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 5.1(5) (with respect to any of Section 8.1(3), Sections 10.6 through 10.8, inclusive, and any such covenants provided pursuant to Section 3.1(21), 9.1(2) or 9.1(7)), 5.1(6), 5.1(7), 5.1(10) and 5.1(11) shall be deemed not to be or result in an Event of Default (herein called "Covenant Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Covenant Defeasance means that, with respect to such Securities, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such specified Section (to the extent so specified in the case of Section 5.1(5)), whether directly or indirectly by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or Article or by reason of any reference in any such Section or Article to any other provision herein or in any other document, but the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

#### **12.4 Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.**

The following shall be the conditions to the application of Section 12.2 or Section 12.3 to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be: (1) the Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee which satisfies the requirements contemplated by Section 6.9 and agrees to comply with the provisions of this Article applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefits of the Holders of such Securities, (A) money in an amount, or (B) U.S. Government Obligations which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, in each case sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or any such other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities on the respective Stated Maturities, in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and such Securities. As used herein, "U.S. Government Obligation" means (x) any security which is (i) a direct obligation of the United States of America for the payment of which the full faith and credit of the United States of America is pledged or (ii) an obligation of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, which, in either case (i) or (ii), is not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and (y) any depositary receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any U.S. Government Obligation which is specified in clause (x) above and held by such bank for the account of the holder of such depositary receipt, or with respect to any specific payment of principal or interest on any U.S. Government Obligation which is so specified and held, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depositary receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation or the specific payment of principal or interest evidenced by such depositary receipt; (2) in the event of an election to have Section 12.2 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or (B) since the date of this instrument, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case (A) or (B) to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit, Defeasance and discharge to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit and Defeasance were not to occur; (3) in the event of an election to have Section 12.3 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit and Covenant Defeasance to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same



times as would be the case if such deposit and Covenant Defeasance were not to occur; (4) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that neither such Securities nor any other Securities of the same series, if then listed on any securities exchange, will be delisted as a result of such deposit; (5) no event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with regard to any such event specified in Sections 5.1(7) and (8), at any time on or prior to the 121st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until after such 121st day); (6) such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not cause the Trustee to have a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act (assuming all Securities are in default within the meaning of such Act); (7) such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound; (8) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause either the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940; and (9) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent with respect to such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

#### **12.5 Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions.**

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.3, all money and U.S. Government Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee or other qualifying trustee (solely for purposes of this Section and Section 12.6, the Trustee and any such other trustee are referred to collectively as the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 12.4 in respect of any Securities shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any such Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal and any premium and interest, but money so held in trust need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the U.S. Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 12.4 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or U.S. Government Obligations held by it as provided in Section 12.4 with respect to any Securities which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect the Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, as the case may be, with respect to such Securities.

## **12.6 Reinstatement.**

If the Trustee or the Paying Agent is unable to apply any funds in accordance with this Article with respect to any Securities by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the obligations under this Indenture and such Securities from which the Company has been discharged or released pursuant to Section 12.2 or 12.3 shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this Article with respect to such Securities, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all funds held in trust pursuant to Section 12.5 with respect to such Securities in accordance with this Article; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of or any premium or interest on any such Security following such reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights (if any) of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the funds so held in trust.

## **ARTICLE THIRTEEN SINKING FUNDS**

### **13.1 Applicability of Article.**

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of any series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of any Securities is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment”, and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of any Securities, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 13.2. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities as provided for by the terms of such Securities.

### **13.2 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.**

The Company (1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption); and (2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series which have been (x) converted or (y) redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as and to the extent provided for by the terms of such Securities; provided, however, that the Securities to be so credited have not been previously so credited. The Securities to be so credited shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price, as specified in the Securities so to be redeemed, for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

**13.3 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.**

Not less than 35 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for such Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities pursuant to Section 13.2 and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 32 days prior to each such sinking fund payment date, the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 11.3 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 11.4. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 11.6 and 11.7.

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

ISSUER:

PHX Minerals Inc.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

TRUSTEE

, As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**PHX MINERALS INC.,**

**as Issuer**

**and**

\_\_\_\_\_ ,

**as Trustee**

**SUBORDINATED INDENTURE**

**Dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
1.1 Definitions.	1
1.2 Compliance Certificates and Opinions	7
1.3 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	7
1.4 Acts of Holders; Record Dates	8
1.5 Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company	10
1.6 Notice to Holders; Waiver	10
1.7 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	11
1.8 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	11
1.9 Successors and Assigns	11
1.10 Separability Clause	11
1.11 Benefits of Indenture	11
1.12 Governing Law	11
1.13 Legal Holidays	11
1.14 No Recourse Against Others	12
1.15 Indenture May Be Executed in Counterparts,	12
ARTICLE TWO SECURITY FORMS	12
2.1 Forms Generally	12
2.2 Form of Face of Security	12
2.3 Form of Reverse of Security	14
2.4 [Intentionally Omitted.]	18
2.5 Form of Legend for Global Securities	18
2.6 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	18
2.7 Form of Conversion Notice	18
ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES	19
3.1 Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	19
3.2 Denominations	21
3.3 Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	21
3.4 Temporary Securities	22
3.5 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	23
3.6 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	25
3.7 Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved	25
3.8 Persons Deemed Owners	26
3.9 Cancellation	27
3.10 Computation of Interest	27
ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	27
4.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	27
4.2 Application of Trust Funds	28
ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES	28
5.1 Events of Default	28
5.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	29
5.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	30
5.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	30
5.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	31
5.6 Application of Funds Collected	31

5.7	Limitation on Suits	31
5.8	Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	31
5.9	Restoration of Rights and Remedies	32
5.10	Rights and Remedies Cumulative	32
5.11	Delay or Omission Not Waiver	32
5.12	Control by Holders	32
5.13	Waiver of Past Defaults	33
5.14	Undertaking for Costs	33
5.15	Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws	33
ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEE		34
6.1	Certain Duties and Responsibilities	34
6.2	Notice of Defaults	34
6.3	Certain Rights of Trustee	34
6.4	Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	35
6.5	May Hold Securities	35
6.6	Money Held in Trust	35
6.7	Compensation and Reimbursement	35
6.8	Conflicting Interests	35
6.9	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	36
6.10	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	36
6.11	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	37
6.12	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	38
6.13	Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	38
6.14	Appointment of Authenticating Agent	38
ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY		40
7.1	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	40
7.2	Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	40
7.3	Reports by Trustee	40
7.4	Reports by Company	41
ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE		41
8.1	Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	41
8.2	Successor Substituted	42
ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		42
9.1	Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	42
9.2	Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders	43
9.3	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	44
9.4	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	44
9.5	5Conformity With Trust Indenture Act	44
9.6	6Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	44
ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS		44
10.1	Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest	44
10.2	Maintenance of Office or Agency	45
10.3	Funds for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust	45
10.4	Statement by Officers as to Default	46
10.5	Existence	47

10.6	Maintenance of Properties	47
10.7	Payment of Taxes and Other Claims	47
10.8	Maintenance of Insurance	47
10.9	Waiver of Certain Covenants	47
ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES		48
11.1	Applicability of Article	48
11.2	Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	48
11.3	Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed	48
11.4	Notice of Redemption	49
11.5	Deposit of Redemption Price	50
11.6	Securities Payable on Redemption Date	50
11.7	Securities Redeemed in Part	50
ARTICLE TWELVE SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES		51
12.1	Applicability of Article	51
12.2	Securities Subordinate to Senior Debt	51
12.3	Payment Over of Proceeds Upon Dissolution, Etc.	51
12.4	No Payment When Senior Debt of the Company in Default	52
12.5	Payment Permitted If No Default	53
12.6	Subrogation to Rights of Holders of Senior Debt of the Company	54
12.7	Provisions Solely to Define Relative Rights	54
12.8	Trustee to Effectuate Subordination	54
12.9	No Waiver of Subordination Provisions	54
12.10	Notice to Trustee	55
12.11	Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent	56
12.12	Trustee Not Fiduciary for Holders of Senior Debt of the Company	56
12.13	Rights of Trustee as Holder of Senior Debt of the Company; Preservation of Trustee's Rights	56
12.14	Article Applicable to Paying Agents	56
12.15	Defeasance of this Article Twelve	57
ARTICLE THIRTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE		57
13.1	Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	57
13.2	Defeasance and Discharge	57
13.3	Covenant Defeasance	57
13.4	Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	58
13.5	Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions	60
13.6	Reinstatement	60
ARTICLE FOURTEEN SINKING FUNDS		61
14.1	Applicability of Article	61
14.2	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	61

PHX MINERALS INC.

RECONCILIATION AND TIE OF CERTAIN SECTIONS OF THIS INDENTURE  
RELATING TO SECTIONS 3.10 THROUGH 3.18, INCLUSIVE, OF THE TRUST  
INDENTURE ACT OF 1939:

<u>TRUST INDENTURE ACT SECTION</u>	<u>INDENTURE SECTION</u>
Section 310 (a)(1)	6.9
(a)(2)	6.9
(a)(3)	Not Applicable
(a)(4)	Not Applicable
(b)	6.8
	6.10
Section 311 (a)	6.13
(b)	6.13
Section 312 (a)	7.1
	7.2
(b)	7.2
(c)	7.2
Section 313 (a)	7.3
(b)	7.3
(c)	7.3
(d)	7.3
Section 314 (a)	7.4
(a)(4)	1.1
	10.4
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	1.2
(c)(2)	1.2
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	1.2
Section 315 (a)	6.1
(b)	6.2
(c)	6.1
(d)	6.1
(e)	5.14



Section 316 (a)	1.1
(a)(1)(A)	5.2
(a)(1)(B)	5.12
(a)(2)	5.13
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)	5.8
Section 317 (a)(1)	1.4
(a)(2)	5.3
(b)	5.4
Section 318 (a)	10.3
	1.7

NOTE: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

## SUBORDINATED INDENTURE

INDENTURE, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, among PHX Minerals Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (herein called the “Company”), having its principal office at 1320 South University Drive, Suite 720, Fort Worth, Texas 76107 and \_\_\_\_\_, a [entity type] duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of [State of Incorporation], as Trustee (herein called the “Trustee”).

### RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured debentures, bonds, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “Securities”), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, for and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

### ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

#### 1.1 Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted at the date of this instrument;
- (4) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article” or a “Section” refers to an Article or a Section, as the case may be, of this Indenture; and

(5) the words “herein”, “hereof”, “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Act,” when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.4

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing; provided that direct or indirect beneficial ownership of 10% or more of the Voting Stock of a Person shall be deemed to be control.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to Section 6.14 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“Board of Directors” means, with respect to the Company, either the board of directors of the Company or any committee of that board duly authorized to act for it in respect hereof.

“Board Resolution” means, with respect to the Company, a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, as the case may be, to have been duly adopted by its Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” when used with respect to any Place of Payment, means each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday which is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“Capital Stock” of any Person means any and all shares, interests, participations or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock or other equity participations, including partnership interests, whether general or limited, of such Person.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” means the common stock, par value \$0.01666 per share, of the Company as the same exists at the date of execution and delivery of this Indenture or other Capital Stock of the Company into which such common stock is converted, reclassified or changed from time to time.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“Company Request” or “Company Order” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by its Non-Executive Chairman, its President or a Vice President, and by its Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Conversion Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to convert any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be administered, such office being located on the date hereof at \_\_\_\_\_.

“Corporation” means a corporation, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company or business trust.

“Covenant Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 13.3.

“Debt” of any Person at any date means any obligation created, assumed or guaranteed by such Person for the repayment of borrowed money.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 3.7.

“Defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 13.2.

“Depository” means, with respect to Securities of any series issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as Depository for such Securities as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 5.1.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Expiration Date” has the meaning specified in Section 1.4.

“Global Security” means a Security that evidences all or part of the Securities of any series and bears the legend set forth in Section 2.5 (or such legend as may be specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities).

“Holder” means a Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, including, for all purposes of this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be a part of and govern this instrument and any such supplemental indenture, respectively. The term “Indenture” shall also include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Interest,” when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Interest Payment Date,” when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Investment Company Act” means the Investment Company Act of 1940 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“Notice of Default” means a written notice of the kind specified in Section 5.1(5).

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Non-Executive Chairman, the President or a Vice President, and by the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company, as the case may be, and delivered to the Trustee. One of the officers signing an Officers’ Certificate given pursuant to Section 10.4 shall be the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company.

“Opinion of Counsel” means, as to the Company, a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel for the Company and who shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.2.

“Outstanding,” when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (1) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (2) Securities for whose payment or redemption funds in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;
- (3) Securities as to which Defeasance has been effected pursuant to Section 13.2; and

- (4) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 3.6 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company; provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given, made or taken any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action hereunder as of any date, (A) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof which would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof to such date pursuant to Section 5.2,(B) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Security is not determinable, the principal amount of such Security which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount as specified or determined as contemplated by Section 3.1,(C) the principal amount of a Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units which shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the U.S. dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner provided as contemplated by Section 3.1, of the principal amount of such Security (or, in the case of a Security described in clause (A) or (B) above, of the amount determined as provided in such clause), and (D) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, only Securities which the Trustee knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

“Paying Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“Place of Payment,” when used with respect to the Securities of any series, means the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series are payable as specified as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.6 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

“Redemption Date,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Price,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“Regular Record Date” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Securities of any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 3.1.

“Securities” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933 and any statute successor thereto, in each case as amended from time to time.

“Security Register” and “Security Registrar” have the respective meanings specified in Section 3.5.

“Senior Debt” with respect to any series of Securities shall have the meaning contemplated in Section 3.1.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 3.7.

“Stated Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” of any Person means (1) a corporation more than 50% of the combined voting power of the outstanding Voting Stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or by such Person and one or more Subsidiaries thereof or (2) any other Person (other than a corporation) in which such Person, or one or more other Subsidiaries of such Person or such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries thereof, directly or indirectly, has at least a majority ownership and power to direct the policies, management and affairs thereof.

“Trust Indenture Act” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “Trust Indenture Act” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“U.S. Government Obligation” has the meaning specified in Section 13.4.

“Vice President” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”.

“Voting Stock” of any Person means Capital Stock of such Person which ordinarily has voting power for the election of directors (or persons performing similar functions) of such Person, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of securities has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

“Wholly Owned Subsidiary” of any Person means a Subsidiary of such Person all of the outstanding Capital Stock of which (other than directors’ qualifying shares) shall at the time be owned by such Person or by one or more Wholly Owned Subsidiaries of such Person or by such Person and one or more Wholly Owned Subsidiaries of such Person.

## **1.2 Compliance Certificates and Opinions.**

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee such certificates and opinions as may be required under the Trust Indenture Act. Each such certificate or opinion shall be given in the form of an Officers’ Certificate, if to be given by an officer of the Company or an Opinion of Counsel, if to be given by counsel, and shall comply with the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act and any other requirements set forth in this Indenture.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture shall include:

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and
- (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

## **1.3 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.**

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the

opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.



Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or opinion of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

#### **1.4 Acts of Holders; Record Dates.**

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the Holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any or all series may take action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any direction, notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action) the fact that at the time of taking any such action the Holders of such specified percentage have joined therein may be evidenced (a) by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by Holders in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing, (b) by the record of the Holders voting in favor thereof at any meeting of Holders duly called and held in accordance with procedures approved by the Trustee, (c) by a combination of such instrument or instruments and any such record of such a meeting of Holders or (d) in the case of Securities evidenced by a Global Security, by any electronic transmission or other message, whether or not in written format, that complies with the Depositary's applicable procedures. Such evidence (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the relevant Holders. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent or proxy shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 6.1) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

The Company may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to give, make or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided or permitted by this Indenture to be given, made or taken by Holders of Securities of such series, provided that the Company may not set a record date for, and the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply with respect to, the giving or making of any notice, declaration, request or direction referred to in the next paragraph. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to take the relevant action, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Company from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Company, at its own expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Trustee in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6. The Trustee may set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series entitled to join in the giving or making of (i) any Notice of Default, (ii) any declaration of acceleration referred to in Section 5.2, (iii) any request to institute proceedings referred to in Section 5.7(2) or (iv) any direction referred to in Section 5.12, in each case with respect to Securities of such series. If any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Holders of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the applicable Expiration Date by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series on such record date. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prevent the Trustee from setting a new record date for any action for which a record date has previously been set pursuant to this paragraph (whereupon the record date previously set shall automatically and with no action by any Person be cancelled and of no effect), and nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to render ineffective any action taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities of the relevant series on the date such action is taken. Promptly after any record date is set pursuant to this paragraph, the Trustee, at the Company's expense, shall cause notice of such record date, the proposed action by Holders and the applicable Expiration Date to be given to the Company in writing and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6.

With respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which sets such record dates may designate any day as the "Expiration Date" and from time to time may change the Expiration Date to any earlier or later day; provided that no such change shall be effective unless notice of the proposed new Expiration Date is given to the other party hereto in

writing, and to each Holder of Securities of the relevant series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6, on or prior to the existing Expiration Date. If an Expiration Date is not designated with respect to any record date set pursuant to this Section, the party hereto which set such record date shall be deemed to have initially designated the 180th day after such record date as the Expiration Date with respect thereto, subject to its right to change the Expiration Date as provided in this paragraph. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no Expiration Date shall be later than the 180th day after the applicable record date.

Without limiting the foregoing, a Holder entitled hereunder to take any action hereunder with regard to any particular Security may do so with regard to all or any part of the principal amount of such Security or by one or more duly appointed agents each of which may do so pursuant to such appointment with regard to all or any part of such principal amount.

**1.5 Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.**

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing in the English language to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Department; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing in the English language and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to the Company at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

**1.6 Notice to Holders; Waiver.**

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders. Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

**1.7 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.**

If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act which is required under such Act to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the latter provision shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act which may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

**1.8 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.**

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

**1.9 Successors and Assigns.**

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

**1.10 Separability Clause.**

In case any provision in this Indenture or the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforce ability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

**1.11 Benefits of Indenture.**

Nothing in this Indenture or the Securities express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder and the Holders, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

**1.12 Governing Law.**

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of [New York].

**1.13 Legal Holidays.**

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, purchase date or Stated Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of the Securities (other than a provision of any Security which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section)) payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date or purchase date, or at the Stated Maturity.

**1.14 No Recourse Against Others.**

No director, officer, employee, incorporator, stockholder, member, partner or trustee of the Company, as such, shall have any liability for any obligations of the Company under the Securities or this Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of, or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. By accepting a Security, each Holder shall be deemed to have waived and released all such liability. The waiver and release shall be a part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities. The waiver may not be effective to waive liabilities under the federal securities laws, and it is the view of the Commission that such a waiver is against public policy.

**1.15 Indenture May Be Executed in Counterparts.**

The parties may sign any number of copies of this Indenture, and each party hereto may sign any number of separate copies of this Indenture. Each signed copy shall be an original, but all of them together represent the same agreement. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and of signature pages by facsimile or PDF transmission shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture as to the parties hereto and may be used in lieu of the original Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile or PDF shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

**ARTICLE TWO  
SECURITY FORMS**

**2.1 Forms Generally.**

The Securities of each series shall be in substantially the form set forth in this Article, or in such other form as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or Depository therefor or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution thereof. If the form of Securities of any series is established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by Section 3.3 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

**2.2 Form of Face of Security.**

[Insert any legend required by the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations thereunder.]

PHX Minerals Inc.

No.

§

PHX Minerals Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of Delaware (herein called the “Company,” which term includes any successor Person under the Indenture hereinafter referred to), for value received, hereby promises to pay to \_\_\_\_\_, or registered assigns, the principal sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars on \_\_\_\_\_ [if the Security is to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert—, and to pay interest thereon from \_\_\_\_\_ or from the most recent Interest Payment Date to which interest has been paid or duly provided for, semi-annually on \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ in each year, commencing \_\_\_\_\_, at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ % per annum, until the principal hereof is paid or made available for payment, provided that any principal and premium, and any such installment of interest, which is overdue shall bear interest at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment, and such interest shall be payable on demand. The interest so payable, and punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date will, as provided in such Indenture, be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, which shall be the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ (whether or not a Business Day), as the case may be, next preceding such Interest Payment Date. Any such interest not so punctually paid or duly provided for will forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on such Regular Record Date and may either be paid to the Person in whose name this Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest to be fixed by the Trustee, notice whereof shall be given to Holders of Securities of this series not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date, or be paid at any time in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which the Securities of this series may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, all as more fully provided in said Indenture].

[If the Security is not to bear interest prior to Maturity, insert—The principal of this Security shall not bear interest except in the case of a default in payment of principal upon acceleration, upon redemption or at Stated Maturity and in such case the overdue principal and any overdue premium shall bear interest at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), from the dates such amounts are due until they are paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue principal or premium shall be payable on demand. Any such interest on overdue principal or premium which is not paid on demand shall bear interest at the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ % per annum (to the extent that the payment of such interest on interest shall be legally enforceable), from the date of such demand until the amount so demanded is paid or made available for payment. Interest on any overdue interest shall be payable on demand.]

Payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and [if applicable, insert—any such] interest on this Security will be made at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in \_\_\_\_\_, in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts; provided, however, that at the option of the Company payment of interest may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Security set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee referred to on the reverse hereof by manual signature, this Security shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this instrument to be duly executed.

Dated:  
PHX Minerals Inc.  
By  
Attest:

**2.3 Form of Reverse of Security.**

This Security is one of a duly authorized issue of securities of the Company (herein called the "Securities"), issued and to be issued in one or more series under an Indenture, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ (herein called the "Indenture", which term shall have the meaning assigned to it in such instrument), among the Company and \_\_\_\_\_, as Trustee (herein called the "Trustee", which term includes any successor trustee under the Indenture), and reference is hereby made to the Indenture for a statement of the respective rights, limitations of rights, duties and immunities thereunder of the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities and of the terms upon which the Securities are, and are to be, authenticated and delivered. This Security is one of the series designated on the face hereof [if applicable, insert—, limited in aggregate principal amount to \$ \_\_\_\_\_].

[If applicable, insert—The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days' notice by mail, [if applicable, insert—(1) on \_\_\_\_\_ in any year commencing with the year \_\_\_\_\_ and ending with the year \_\_\_\_\_ through operation of the sinking fund for this series at a Redemption Price equal to 100% of the principal amount, and (2)] at any time [if applicable, insert—on or after \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the following Redemption Prices (expressed as percentages of the principal amount): If redeemed [if applicable, insert—on or before \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ %, and if redeemed] during the 12-month period beginning of the years indicated,

<u>Year</u>	<u>Redemption Price</u>	<u>Year</u>	<u>Redemption Price</u>
-------------	-------------------------	-------------	-------------------------

and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to \_\_\_\_\_% of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption [if applicable, insert— (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise)] with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

[If applicable, insert—The Securities of this series are subject to redemption upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ notice by mail, (1) on \_\_\_\_\_ in any year commencing with the year \_\_\_\_\_ and ending with the year \_\_\_\_\_ through operation of the sinking fund for this series at the Redemption Prices for redemption through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below, and (2) at any time [if applicable, insert—on or after \_\_\_\_\_], as a whole or in part, at the election of the Company, at the Redemption Prices for redemption otherwise than through operation of the sinking fund (expressed as percentages of the principal amount) set forth in the table below: If redeemed during the 12-month period beginning of the years indicated, and thereafter at a Redemption Price equal to \_\_\_\_\_% of the principal amount, together in the case of any such redemption (whether through operation of the sinking fund or otherwise) with accrued interest to the Redemption Date, but interest installments whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to such Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, of record at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates referred to on the face hereof, all as provided in the Indenture.]

<u>Year</u>	<u>Redemption Price for Redemption Through Operation of the Sinking Fund</u>	<u>Redemption Price for Redemption Otherwise than Through Operation of the Sinking Fund</u>
-------------	--	---

The indebtedness evidenced by this Security is, to the extent provided in the Indenture, subordinate and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Debt of the Company, and this Security is issued subject to the provisions of the Indenture with respect thereto.

Each Holder of this Security, by accepting the same, (a) agrees to and shall be bound by such provisions, (b) authorizes and directs the Trustee on his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination so provided and (c) appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

[If applicable, insert—Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may not, prior to \_\_\_\_\_, redeem any Securities of this series as contemplated by [if applicable, insert—clause (2) of] the preceding paragraph as a part of, or in anticipation of, any refunding operation by the application, directly or indirectly, of moneys borrowed having an interest cost to the Company (calculated in accordance with generally accepted financial practice) of less than \_\_\_\_\_% per annum.]

[If applicable, insert—The sinking fund for this series provides for the redemption on \_\_\_\_\_ in each year beginning with the year \_\_\_\_\_ and ending with the year \_\_\_\_\_ of [if applicable, insert—not less than \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (“mandatory sinking fund”) and not more than] \$ \_\_\_\_\_ aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series. Securities of this series acquired or redeemed by the Company otherwise than through [if applicable, insert—mandatory] sinking fund payments may be credited against subsequent [if applicable, insert—mandatory] sinking fund payments otherwise required to be made [if applicable, insert—, in the inverse order in which they become due].]



[If the Security is subject to redemption of any kind, insert—In the event of redemption of this Security in part only, a new Security or Securities of this series and of like tenor for the unredeemed portion hereof will be issued in the name of the Holder hereof upon the cancellation hereof.]

[If the Security is subject to conversion, insert—Subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder has the right to convert the principal amount of this Security into fully paid and nonassessable shares of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] of the Company at the initial conversion price per share of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (or \$\_\_\_\_\_ in principal amount of Securities for each such share of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock]), or at the adjusted conversion price then in effect, if adjustment has been made as provided in the Indenture, upon surrender of the Security to the Conversion Agent, together with a fully executed notice in substantially the form attached hereto and, if required by the Indenture, an amount equal to accrued interest payable on this Security.]

[If applicable, insert—The Indenture contains provisions for Defeasance at any time of [the entire indebtedness of this Security] [or] [certain restrictive covenants and Events of Default with respect to this Security] [, in each case] upon compliance with certain conditions set forth in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is not an Original Issue Discount Security, insert—If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, the principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture.]

[If the Security is an Original Issue Discount Security, insert—If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of this series shall occur and be continuing, an amount of principal of the Securities of this series may be declared due and payable in the manner and with the effect provided in the Indenture. Such amount shall be equal to—insert formula for determining the amount. Upon payment (i) of the amount of principal so declared due and payable and (ii) of interest on any overdue principal, premium and interest (in each case to the extent that the payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable), all of the Company's obligations in respect of the payment of the principal of and premium and interest, if any, on the Securities of this series shall terminate.]

The Indenture permits, with certain exceptions as therein provided, the amendment thereof and the modification of the rights and obligations of the Company and the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each series to be affected under the Indenture at any time by the Company and the Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities at the time Outstanding of each series to be affected. The Indenture also contains provisions permitting the Holders of specified percentages in principal amount of the Securities of each series at the time Outstanding, on behalf of the Holders of all Securities of such series, to waive compliance by the Company with certain provisions of the Indenture and certain past defaults under the Indenture and their consequences. Any such consent or waiver by the Holder of this Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such Holder and upon all future Holders of this Security and of any Security issued upon the registration of transfer hereof or in exchange hereof or in lieu hereof, whether or not notation of such consent or waiver is made upon this Security.

As provided in and subject to the provisions of the Indenture, the Holder of this Security shall not have the right to institute any proceeding with respect to the Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee or for any other remedy thereunder, unless such Holder shall have previously given the Trustee written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of this series, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Securities of this series at the time Outstanding shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default as Trustee and offered the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity, and the Trustee shall not have received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of Securities of this series at the time Outstanding a direction inconsistent with such request, and shall have failed to institute any such proceeding, for 60 days after receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity. The foregoing shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Holder of this Security for the enforcement of any payment of principal hereof or any premium or interest hereon on or after the respective due dates expressed herein [if applicable, insert—or the right to convert this Security in accordance with its terms].

No reference herein to the Indenture and no provision of this Security or of the Indenture shall alter or impair the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security at the times, place and rate, and in the coin or currency, herein prescribed [if applicable, insert—and to convert such Security in accordance with its terms].

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Security is registrable in the Security Register, upon surrender of this Security for registration of transfer at the office or agency of the Company in any place where the principal of and any premium and interest on this Security are payable, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed by, the Holder hereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Securities of this series and of like tenor, of authorized denominations and for the same aggregate principal amount, will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Securities of this series are issuable only in registered form [without coupons] in denominations of \$\_\_\_\_\_ and any integral multiple thereof. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, Securities of this series are exchangeable for a like aggregate principal amount of Securities of this series and of like tenor of a different authorized denomination, as requested by the Holder surrendering the same.

No service charge shall be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

Prior to due presentment of this Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name this Security is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, whether or not this Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any such agent shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

All terms used in this Security which are defined in the Indenture shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Indenture.

**2.4 [Intentionally Omitted.]**

**2.5 Form of Legend for Global Securities.**

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for the Securities evidenced thereby, every Global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITARY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

**2.6 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.**

The Trustee's certificates of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

As Trustee

By:

Authorized Officer

**2.7 Form of Conversion Notice.**

Each convertible Security shall have attached thereto, or set forth on the reverse of the Security, a notice of conversion in substantially the following form:

Conversion Notice

To: PHX Minerals Inc.

The undersigned owner of this Security hereby: (i) irrevocably exercises the option to convert this Security, or the portion hereof below designated, for shares of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] of PHX Minerals Inc. in accordance with the terms of the Indenture referred to in this Security and (ii) directs that such shares of [Common Stock or Preferred Stock] deliverable upon the conversion, together with any check in payment for fractional shares and any

Security(ies) representing any unconverted principal amount hereof, be issued and delivered to the registered holder hereof unless a different name has been indicated below. If shares are to be delivered registered in the name of a person other than the undersigned, the undersigned will pay all transfer taxes payable with respect thereto. Any amount required to be paid by the undersigned on account of interest accompanies this Security.

Dated

Signature

Fill in for registration of shares if to be delivered, and of Securities if to be issued, otherwise than to and in the name of the registered holder.

---

Social Security or other Taxpayer Identification Number

---

(Name)

(Please print name and address)

---

Principal amount to be converted: (if less than all)

\$

Signature Guarantee\*

---

\* Participant in a recognized Signature Guarantee Medallion Program (or other signature acceptable to the Trustee).

### ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES

#### 3.1 **Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.**

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution and, subject to Section 3.3, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series, (1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from Securities of any other series); (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 9.6 or 11.7 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 3.3, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder); (3) any change to the subordination provisions which applies to the Securities of the series from those contained in Article Twelve, and the definitions

of Senior Debt and Designated Senior Debt which shall apply to the Securities of the series; (4) the Person to whom any interest on a Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest; (5) the date or dates on which the principal of any Securities of the series is payable; (6) the rate or rates at which any Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which any such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any such interest payable on any Interest Payment Date; (7) the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable; (8) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to redeem the Securities shall be evidenced; (9) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase any Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of the Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which any Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation; (10) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which any Securities of the series shall be issuable; (11) if the amount of principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index or pursuant to a formula, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined; (12) if other than the currency of the United States of America, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series shall be payable and the manner of determining the equivalent thereof in the currency of the United States of America for any purpose, including for purposes of the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 1.1; (13) if the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of the series is to be payable, at the election of the Company or the Holder thereof, in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are stated to be payable, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the principal of or any premium or interest on such Securities as to which such election is made shall be payable, the periods within which and the terms and conditions upon which such election is to be made and the amount so payable (or the manner in which such amount shall be determined); (14) if other than the entire principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.2; (15) if the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of any Securities of the series will not be determinable as of any one or more dates prior to the Stated Maturity, the amount which shall be deemed to be the principal amount of such Securities as of any such date for any purpose thereunder or hereunder, including the principal amount thereof which shall be due and payable upon any Maturity other than the Stated Maturity or which shall be deemed to be Outstanding as of any date prior to the Stated Maturity (or, in any such case, the manner in which such amount deemed to be the principal amount shall be determined); (16) if applicable, that the Securities of the series, in whole or any specified part, shall be defeasible pursuant to Section 13.2 or Section 13.3 or both such Sections and, if other than by a Board Resolution, the manner in which any election by the Company to defease such Securities shall be evidenced; (17) if applicable, that any Securities of the series shall be issuable in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and, in such case, the respective Depositories for such Global Securities, the form of any legend or legends which shall be borne by any such Global Security in addition to or in lieu

of that set forth in Section 2.5 and any circumstances in addition to or in lieu of those set forth in clause (2) of the last paragraph of Section 3.5 in which any such Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and any transfer of such Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name or names of Persons other than the Depositary for such Global Security or a nominee thereof; (18) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 5.2; (19) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Article Ten which applies to Securities of the series; (20) whether the Securities of the series will be convertible into Common Stock [or Preferred Stock] (or cash in lieu thereof) and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such conversion will be effected; and (21) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by Section 9.1(5)).

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution referred to above and (subject to Section 3.3) set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

The Securities of each series shall be subordinated in the right of payment to Senior Debt of the Company as provided in Article Twelve unless the Company elects otherwise upon the establishment of a series pursuant to this Section 3.1.

### **3.2 Denominations.**

The Securities of each series shall be issuable only in registered form without coupons and only in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 3.1. In the absence of any such specified denomination with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of such series shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

### **3.3 Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.**

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Non-Executive Chairman, its President or one of its Vice Presidents. If its corporate seal is reproduced thereon, then it shall be attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If the form or terms of the Securities of the series have been established by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions as permitted by Sections 2.1 and 3.1, in authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.1) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating, (1) if the form of such Securities has been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 2.1, that such form has been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; (2) if the terms of such Securities have been established by or pursuant to Board Resolution as permitted by Section 3.1, that such terms have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and (3) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, moratorium and similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equity principles.

If such form or terms have been so established, the Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the

Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner which is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.1 and of the preceding paragraph, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 3.1 or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to such preceding paragraph at or prior to the authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 3.9, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

### **3.4 Temporary Securities.**

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor one or more definitive Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series and tenor.

### **3.5 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.**

The Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee a register (the register maintained in such office and in any other office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes collectively referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities and of transfers of Securities. The Trustee is hereby appointed "Security Registrar" for the purpose of registering Securities and transfers of Securities as herein provided.

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of a series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

At the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.



Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.4, 9.6, 11.7 or otherwise not involving any transfer.

If the Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, the Company shall not be required (A) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of any such Securities selected for redemption under Section 11.3 and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (B) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any Security being redeemed in part.

The provisions of clauses (1), (2), (3) and (4) below shall apply only to Global Securities: (1) each Global Security authenticated under this Indenture shall be registered in the name of the Depository designated for such Global Security or a nominee thereof and delivered to such Depository or a nominee thereof or custodian therefor, and each such Global Security shall constitute a single Security for all purposes of this Indenture; (2) notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, no Global Security may be exchanged in whole or in part for Securities registered, and no transfer of a Global Security in whole or in part may be registered, in the name of any Person other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof unless (A) such Depository (i) has notified the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or (ii) has ceased to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and in either case the Company fails to appoint a successor Depository within 90 days, (B) there shall have occurred and be continuing an Event of Default with respect to such Global Security and the Depository shall have notified the Trustee of its decision to exchange such Global Security for Securities in certificated form, (C) subject to the rules of the Depository, the Company shall have elected to terminate the book-entry system through the Depository or (D) there shall exist such circumstances, if any, in addition to or in lieu of the foregoing as have been specified for this purpose as contemplated by Section 3.1; (3) subject to clause (2) above, any exchange of a Global Security for other Securities may be made in whole or in part, and all Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security or any portion thereof shall be registered in such names as the Depository for such Global Security shall direct; and (4) every Security authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for or in lieu of, a Global Security or any portion thereof, whether pursuant to this Section, Section 3.4, 3.6, 9.6 or 11.7 or otherwise, shall be authenticated and delivered in the form of, and shall be, a Global Security, unless such Security is registered in the name of a Person other than the Depository for such Global Security or a nominee thereof.

### **3.6 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.**

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless from any loss that any of them may suffer if a Security is replaced, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable or is to be converted, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay or authorize the conversion of such Security (without surrender thereof save in the case of a mutilated Security).

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement, payment or conversion of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

### **3.7 Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.**

Except as otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.1 with respect to any series of Securities, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given to each Holder of Securities of such series in the manner set forth in Section 1.6, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so mailed, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2); and

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

### **3.8 Persons Deemed Owners.**

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 3.7) any interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

### **3.9 Cancellation.**

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, purchase, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section 3.9, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of in accordance with its standard procedures, unless as directed by a Company Order.

### **3.10 Computation of Interest.**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for Securities of any series, interest on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

## **ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE**

### **4.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.**

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to the Securities of any series, and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when (1) either (A) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.6 and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment funds have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 10.3) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or (B) all such Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (i) have become due and payable, or (ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or (iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose funds in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and any premium and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be; (2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Securities of such series; and (3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 6.7, the obligations of the Company with respect to the Securities of such series under Sections 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 10.2 and 10.3, any surviving rights of conversion, the obligations of the Trustee to any Authenticating Agent under Section 6.14 and, if funds shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 4.2 and the last paragraph of Section 10.3 shall survive.

#### **4.2 Application of Trust Funds.**

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.3, all funds deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.1 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and any premium and interest for whose payment such funds have been deposited with the Trustee.

## **ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES**

#### **5.1 Events of Default.**

“Event of Default”, wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be occasioned by the provisions of Article Twelve or be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body): (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or (2) default in the payment of the principal of or any premium on any Security of that series at its Maturity; or (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of a Security of that series; or (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant of the Company in Article Eight of this Indenture; or (5) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or (6) any Debt of the Company is not paid within any applicable grace period after final maturity or is accelerated by the holders thereof because of a default; or (7) any judgment or decree for the payment of money is entered against the Company with respect to the Securities of such series, remains outstanding for a period of 60 consecutive days following the entry of such judgment or decree and is not discharged, waived or the execution thereof stayed; or (8) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company with respect to the Securities of such series, in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the

Company, under any applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or (9) the commencement by the Company of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it or them to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable Federal or State bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it or them, or the filing by it or them of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it or them to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it or them in writing of its or their inability to pay its or their debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company in furtherance of any such action; or (10) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

## **5.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.**

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 5.1(8) or 5.1(9)) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may declare the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof) to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount), together with any accrued and unpaid interest thereon, shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default with respect to the Company specified in Section 5.1(8) or 5.1(9) with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Securities of that series (or, if any Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount of such Securities as may be specified by the terms thereof), together with any accrued and unpaid interest thereon, shall automatically, and without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if (1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay (A) all overdue interest on all Securities of that series, (B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and any interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, (C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful,

interest upon overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and (D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel; and (2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that series which has become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

**5.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.**

The Company covenants that if (1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal and premium and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

**5.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.**

In case of any judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, or the property or creditors of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise, to take any and all actions authorized under the Trust Indenture Act in order to have claims of the Holders and the Trustee allowed in any such proceeding. In particular, the Trustee shall be authorized to collect and receive any monies or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.7.

No provision of this Indenture shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding; provided, however, that the Trustee may, on behalf of the Holders, vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and be a member of a creditors' or other similar committee.

#### **5.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.**

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

#### **5.6 Application of Funds Collected.**

Any funds collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such funds on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid: FIRST: to the payment of all amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.7; SECOND: subject to Article Twelve, to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such funds have been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively; and THIRD: the balance, if any, to the Company or to such other Person as a court of competent jurisdiction shall direct.

#### **5.7 Limitation on Suits.**

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series; (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder; (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request; (4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of security or indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

#### **5.8 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.**

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to Section 3.7) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or offer by the Company to purchase the Securities pursuant to the terms of this Indenture, on the Redemption Date or purchase date, as applicable) and, if applicable, to convert such Security in accordance with its terms, and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such right, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.



**5.9 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.**

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

**5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.**

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 3.6, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

**5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver.**

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

**5.12 Control by Holders.**

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture, and (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

**5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults.**

The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default (1) in the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of such series (including any Security which is required to have been purchased by the Company pursuant to an offer to purchase by the Company made pursuant to the terms of this Indenture), or (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

**5.14 Undertaking for Costs.**

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that neither this Section nor the Trust Indenture Act shall be deemed to authorize any court to require such an undertaking or to make such an assessment in any suit instituted by the Company.

**5.15 Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws.**

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any usury, stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

**ARTICLE SIX  
THE TRUSTEE**

**6.1 Certain Duties and Responsibilities.**

The duties and responsibilities of the Trustee shall be as expressly set forth in this Indenture and as provided by the Trust Indenture Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it. Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

**6.2 Notice of Defaults.**

If a default occurs hereunder with respect to Securities of any series, the Trustee shall give the Holders of Securities of such series notice of such default as and to the extent provided by the Trust Indenture Act; provided, however, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 5.1(5) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term “default” means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

**6.3 Certain Rights of Trustee.**

Subject to the provisions of Section 6.1: (1) the Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties; (2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order, and any resolution of the Board of Directors shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution; (3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers’ Certificate; (4) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon; (5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction; (6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney; and (7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

**6.4 Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.**

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

**6.5 May Hold Securities.**

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 6.8 and 6.13, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

**6.6 Money Held in Trust.**

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

**6.7 Compensation and Reimbursement.**

The Company agrees (1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust); (2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to its negligence or bad faith; and (3) to indemnify the Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

**6.8 Conflicting Interests.**

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture. To the extent permitted by such Act, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have a conflicting interest by virtue of being a trustee under this Indenture with respect to Securities of more than one series.

#### **6.9 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.**

There shall at all times be one (and only one) Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of each series, which may be Trustee hereunder for Securities of one or more other series. Each Trustee shall be a Person that is eligible pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act to act as such, and has a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If any such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section and to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture Act, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

#### **6.10 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.**

No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 6.11.

The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 6.11 shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

If at any time: (1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 6.8 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months; or (2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.9 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Holder; or (3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (A) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (B) subject to Section 5.14, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee

may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 6.11. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 6.11, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders and accepted appointment in the manner required by Section 6.11, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to all Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided in Section 1.6. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

#### **6.11 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.**

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee; and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or

facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates.

Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in the first or second preceding paragraph, as the case may be.

No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article Six.

#### **6.12 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.**

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such Person shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. As soon as practicable, the successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to the Company and the Holders of the Securities then Outstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

#### **6.13 Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.**

If and when the Trustee shall be or become a creditor of the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities, the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act regarding the collection of claims against the Company or any such other obligor.

#### **6.14 Appointment of Authenticating Agent.**

The Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue and upon exchange, registration of transfer, conversion or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 3.6, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes

as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a Person organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any Person into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such Person shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give notice of such appointment in the manner provided in Section 1.6 to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Trustee agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section, and the Trustee shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 6.7.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternative certificate of authentication in the following form:



This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_  
As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
As Authenticating Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Officer

**ARTICLE SEVEN  
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY**

**7.1 Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.**

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee with respect to the Securities of each series: (1) not more than 10 days after each record date with respect to the payment of interest, if any, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of such series as of such record date, and (2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; excluding from any such list names and addresses received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar.

**7.2 Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.**

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 7.1 and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.1 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and privileges of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any agent of any of them shall be held accountable by reason of any disclosure of information as to names and addresses of Holders made pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act.

**7.3 Reports by Trustee.**

The Trustee shall transmit to Holders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant thereto.

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will notify the Trustee when any Securities are listed on any stock exchange.

#### **7.4 Reports by Company.**

The Company shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is filed with the Commission.

### **ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE**

#### **8.1 Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.**

The Company shall not, in a single transaction or a series of related transactions, consolidate with or merge into any other Person or permit any other Person to consolidate with or merge into the Company or, directly or indirectly, transfer, convey, sell, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets, unless: (1) in a transaction in which the Company does not survive or in which the Company transfers, conveys, sells, leases or otherwise disposes of all or substantially all of its assets, the successor entity (for purposes of this Article Eight, a "Successor Company") shall be a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and any premium and interest on all the Securities and the performance or observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed; (2) immediately before and after giving pro forma effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness which becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of such transaction as having been incurred by the Company or such Subsidiary at the time of such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; (3) if, as a result of any such consolidation or merger or such transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition, properties or assets of the Company would become subject to a mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest or other encumbrance which would not be permitted by this Indenture, the Company or the Successor Company, as the case may be, shall take such steps as shall be necessary effectively to secure the Securities equally and ratably with (or prior to) all indebtedness secured thereby; (4) any other conditions provided pursuant to Section 3.1 with respect to the Securities of a series are satisfied; and (5) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

## **8.2 Successor Substituted.**

Upon any consolidation of the Company with, or merger of the Company into, any other Person or any transfer, conveyance, sale, lease or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company in accordance with Section 8.1, the Successor Company shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

## **ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES**

### **9.1 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.**

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes: (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities, as the case may be; or (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or (3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such additional Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such additional Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); or (4) to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in bearer form, registrable or not registrable as to principal, and with or without interest coupons, or to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in uncertificated form; or (5) to add to, change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture in respect of one or more series of Securities, provided that any such addition, change or elimination (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefit of such provision nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision or (B) shall become effective only when there is no such Security Outstanding; or (6) to secure the Securities; or (7) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 2.1 and 3.1; or (8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 6.11; or (9) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein; or (10) to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture, provided that such action pursuant to this clause (10) shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect; or (11) to make any change to the provisions of Article Twelve that limits or terminates the benefits applicable to any holder of Senior Debt.

## **9.2 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Holders.**

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby: (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest thereon or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Security which would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.2, or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of (a) any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date or in the case of an offer to purchase Securities which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, on or after the applicable purchase date) or (b) any conversion right with respect to any Security, or modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to the conversion of the Securities, in a manner adverse to the Holders, other than as provided in this Indenture; or (2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture; or (3) modify any of the provisions of this Section, Section 5.13 or Section 10.9, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder with respect to changes in the references to “the Trustee” and concomitant changes in this Section and Section 10.9, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 6.11 and 9.1(8); or (4) following the making of an offer to purchase Securities from any Holder which has been made pursuant to a covenant contained in this Indenture, modify the provisions of this Indenture with respect to such offer to purchase in a manner adverse to such Holder.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

After a supplemental indenture under this Section 9.2 requiring the consent of the Holders of any series of Securities is approved, the Company shall mail to Holders of that series of Securities a notice briefly describing any amendment or supplement hereto effected by such supplemental indenture. The failure to give such notice to any such Holders, or any defect therein, shall not impair or affect the validity of any amendment or supplement hereto effected by such supplemental indenture with respect to other Holders.

**9.3 Execution of Supplemental Indentures.**

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.1) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

**9.4 Effect of Supplemental Indentures.**

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

**9.5 Conformity With Trust Indenture Act.**

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act.

**9.6 Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.**

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and such new Securities may be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

**ARTICLE TEN  
COVENANTS**

**10.1 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.**

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities and this Indenture. Principal, premium, if any, and interest shall be considered paid on the date due if the Paying Agent, if other than the Company or a Subsidiary thereof, holds as of 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on the due date funds deposited with it in immediately available funds and designated for and sufficient to pay all principal, premium, if any, and interest then due, and such Paying agent is not prohibited from paying such funds to the Holders entitled thereto on such date pursuant to the terms of Article Twelve of this Indenture.

## **10.2 Maintenance of Office or Agency.**

The Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment or, if applicable, for conversion, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

## **10.3 Funds for Securities Payments to be Held in Trust.**

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal and any premium and interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on each due date of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay such amount, such sum to be held as provided by the Trust Indenture Act, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent for any series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will (1) comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act applicable to it as a Paying Agent and (2) during the continuance of any default by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of that series in the making of any payment in respect of the Securities of that series, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent for payment in respect of the Securities of that series.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such funds.

Any funds deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust funds, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in a newspaper published in the English language, customarily published on each Business Day and of general circulation in [The City of New York, New York], notice that such funds remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such funds then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

#### **10.4 Statement by Officers as to Default.**

(a) The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 90 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company ending after the date hereof, an Officers' Certificate, stating whether or not to the best knowledge of the signers thereof (i) the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided hereunder) and, if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which it may have knowledge, and (ii) any event has occurred and remains in existence prohibiting any payments on any series of Securities then Outstanding and, if any such event exists, a description of such event and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

(b) The Company shall, so long as any series of Securities is Outstanding, deliver to the Trustee, as soon as possible and in any event within five days after the Company becomes aware of the occurrence of an Event of Default or an event which, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute an Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate setting forth the details of such Event of Default or default, and the action which the Company proposes to take with respect thereto.

#### **10.5 Existence.**

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect the existence, rights (charter and statutory) and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if it shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

#### **10.6 Maintenance of Properties.**

The Company will cause all properties used or useful in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary to be maintained and kept in good condition, repair and working order (reasonable wear and tear excepted) and supplied with all necessary equipment and will cause to be made all necessary repairs, renewals, replacements, betterments and improvements thereof, all as in the judgment of the Company may be necessary so that the business carried on in connection therewith may be properly and advantageously conducted at all times; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the Company from discontinuing the operation or maintenance of any of such properties if such discontinuance is, in the judgment of the Company, desirable in the conduct of its business or the business of any Subsidiary and not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

#### **10.7 Payment of Taxes and Other Claims.**

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or any Subsidiary or upon the income, profits or property of the Company or any Subsidiary, and (2) all lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies which, if unpaid, might by law become a lien upon the property of the Company or any Subsidiary; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

#### **10.8 Maintenance of Insurance.**

The Company shall, and shall cause its Subsidiaries to, keep at all times all of their properties which are of an insurable nature insured against loss or damage with insurers believed by the Company to be responsible to the extent that property of similar character is usually so insured by corporations similarly situated and owning like properties in accordance with good business practice.

#### **10.9 Waiver of Certain Covenants.**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for Securities of such series, the Company may, with respect to the Securities of any series, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any of Sections 10.5 through 10.8 or in any covenant provided pursuant to Section 3.1(22), 9.1(2) or 9.1(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in principal



amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

## **ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES**

### **11.1 Applicability of Article.**

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities) in accordance with this Article.

### **11.2 Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.**

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities.

In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all the Securities of any series (including any such redemption affecting only a single Security), the Company shall, at least five Business Days prior to giving notice of such redemption (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date, of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

### **11.3 Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed.**

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed (unless all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed or unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, (i) in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which such Securities are listed, if such Securities are listed on any national securities exchange, and (ii) if such Securities are not so listed, on a pro rata basis, by lot or by such other method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of a portion of the principal amount of any Security of such series, provided that the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of any Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security. If less than all the Securities of such series and of a specified tenor are to be redeemed (unless such redemption affects only a single Security), the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such series and specified tenor not previously called for redemption in accordance with the preceding sentence.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption as aforesaid and, in case of any Securities selected for partial redemption as aforesaid, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

The provisions of the two preceding paragraphs shall not apply with respect to any redemption affecting only a single Security, whether such Security is to be redeemed in whole or in part. In the case of any such redemption in part, the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of the Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed. If any Security selected for partial redemption is surrendered for conversion after such selection, the converted portion of such Security shall be deemed (so far as may be) to be the portion selected for redemption. Upon any redemption of less than all the Securities of a series, for purposes of selection for redemption the Company and the Trustee may treat as Outstanding Securities surrendered for conversion during the period of 15 days next preceding the mailing of a notice of redemption, and need not treat as Outstanding any Security authenticated and delivered during such period in exchange for the unconverted portion of any Security converted in part during such period.

#### **11.4 Notice of Redemption.**

Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register; provided, however, notice of redemption may be given more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date if the notice is issued in connection with a satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Article Four.

All notices of redemption shall state: (1) the Redemption Date, (2) the Redemption Price, if then determinable and otherwise the method of its determination, (3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of more than a single Security are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption of any such Securities, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed and, if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series consisting of a single Security are to be redeemed, the principal amount of the particular Security to be redeemed, (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date, (5) the place or places where each such Security is to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price, (6) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case; and (7) if applicable, the conversion price then in effect and the date on which the right to convert such Securities will expire.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company and shall be irrevocable. If any Security called for redemption is converted pursuant hereto, any funds deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent or so segregated and held in trust for the redemption of such Security shall be paid to the Company upon delivery of a Company Request to the Trustee or such Paying Agent, or, if then held by the Company, shall be discharged from such trust.

**11.5 Deposit of Redemption Price.**

Prior to 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.3) an amount of funds sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

**11.6 Securities Payable on Redemption Date.**

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1, installments of interest whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date will be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.7.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security.

**11.7 Securities Redeemed in Part.**

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

**ARTICLE TWELVE  
SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES**

**12.1 Applicability of Article.**

Unless otherwise provided with respect to the Securities of any series in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture establishing such series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.1, the provisions of this Article shall be applicable to each series of Securities.

**12.2 Securities Subordinate to Senior Debt.**

The Company covenants and agrees, and each Holder of a Security, by his acceptance thereof, likewise covenants and agrees, that, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth in this Article Twelve (subject to the provisions of Article Four and Article Thirteen), the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on each and all of the Securities of such series is hereby expressly made subordinate and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Debt of the Company.

No provisions of this Article Twelve shall prevent the occurrence of any Event of Default.

**12.3 Payment Over of Proceeds Upon Dissolution, Etc.**

In the event of (a) any insolvency or bankruptcy case or proceeding, or any receivership, liquidation, reorganization or other similar case or proceeding in connection therewith, relative to the Company or to its creditors, as such, or to its assets, or (b) any liquidation, dissolution or other winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary and whether or not involving insolvency or bankruptcy, or (c) any assignment for the benefit of creditors or any other marshalling of assets and liabilities of the Company, then and in any such event specified in (a), (b) or (c) above (each such event, if any, herein sometimes referred to as a "Proceeding") the holders of Senior Debt of the Company shall be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due or to become due on or in respect of all Senior Debt of the Company, or provision shall be made for such payment in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, before the Holders of the Securities are entitled to receive any payment or distribution of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities (including any payment or distribution which may be payable or deliverable by reason of the payment of any other indebtedness of the Company subordinated to the payment of the Securities, such payment or distribution being hereinafter referred to as a "Junior Subordinated Payment"), on account of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on the Securities or on account of any purchase or other acquisition of Securities by the Company or any Subsidiary of the Company (all such payments, distributions, purchases and acquisitions, other than the payment or distribution of stock or securities of the Company referred to in the second succeeding paragraph, herein referred to, individually and collectively, as a "Securities Payment"), and to that end the holders of Senior Debt of the Company shall be entitled to receive, for application to the payment thereof, any Securities Payment which may be payable or deliverable in respect of the Securities in any such Proceeding.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, the Trustee or the Holder of any Security shall have received any Securities Payment before all Senior Debt of the Company is paid in full or payment thereof provided for in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, and if such fact shall, at or prior to the time of such Securities Payment, have been made known to the Trustee or, as the case may be, such Holder, then and in such event such Securities Payment shall be paid over or delivered forthwith to the trustee in bankruptcy, receiver, liquidating trustee, custodian, assignee, agent or other Person making payment or distribution of assets of the Company for application to the payment of all Senior Debt of the Company remaining unpaid, to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Debt of the Company in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of Senior Debt of the Company.

For purposes of this Article Twelve only, the words “any payment or distribution of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities” shall not be deemed to include a payment or distribution of stock or securities of the Company provided for by a plan of reorganization or readjustment authorized by an order or decree of a court of competent jurisdiction in a reorganization proceeding under any applicable bankruptcy law or of any other corporation provided for by such plan of reorganization or readjustment which stock or securities are subordinated in right of payment to all then outstanding Senior Debt of the Company to substantially the same extent as the Securities are so subordinated as provided in this Article Twelve. The consolidation of the Company with, or the merger of the Company into, another Person or the liquidation or dissolution of the Company following the conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of its assets to another Person upon the terms and conditions set forth in Article Eight shall not be deemed a Proceeding for the purposes of this Section if the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or other disposition such assets, as the case may be, shall, as a part of such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer, comply with the conditions set forth in Article Eight.

#### **12.4 No Payment When Senior Debt of the Company in Default.**

In the event that any Senior Payment Default (as defined below) shall have occurred and be continuing, then no Securities Payment shall be made unless and until such Senior Payment Default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist or all amounts then due and payable in respect of Senior Debt of the Company shall have been paid in full, or provision shall have been made for such payment in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the satisfaction of any sinking fund payment in accordance with Article Fourteen by delivering and crediting pursuant to Section 13.2 Securities which have been acquired (upon redemption or otherwise) prior to such Senior Payment Default.

“Senior Payment Default” means any default in the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Senior Debt of the Company when due, whether at the Stated Maturity of any such payment or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

In the event that any Senior Nonmonetary Default (as defined below) shall have occurred and be continuing, then, upon the receipt by the Company and the Trustee of written notice of such Senior Nonmonetary Default from the agent for the Designated Senior Debt which is the subject of such Senior Nonmonetary Default, no Securities Payment shall be made during the period (the "Payment Blockage Period") commencing on the date of such receipt of such written notice and ending on the earlier of (i) the date on which such Senior Nonmonetary Default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist or all Designated Senior Debt the subject of such Senior Nonmonetary Default shall have been discharged; (ii) the 179th day after the date of such receipt of such written notice; or (iii) the date on which the Payment Blockage Period shall have been terminated by written notice to the Company or the Trustee from the agent for the Designated Senior Debt initiating the Payment Blockage Period; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the satisfaction of any sinking fund payment in accordance with Article Fourteen by delivering and crediting pursuant to Section 13.2 Securities which have been acquired (upon redemption or otherwise) prior to the date of such receipt of such written notice. No more than one Payment Blockage Period may be commenced with respect to the Securities of a particular series during any 360-day period and there shall be a period of at least 181 consecutive days in each 360-day period when no Payment Blockage Period is in effect. For all purposes of this paragraph, no Senior Nonmonetary Default that existed or was continuing on the date of commencement of any Payment Blockage Period shall be, or be made, the basis for the commencement of a subsequent Payment Blockage Period, whether or not within a period of 360 consecutive days, unless such Senior Nonmonetary Default shall have been cured for a period of not less than 90 consecutive days.

"Senior Nonmonetary Default" means the occurrence or existence and continuance of any event of default with respect to any Designated Senior Debt, other than a Senior Payment Default, permitting the holders of such Designated Senior Debt (or a trustee or agent on behalf of the holders thereof) to declare such Designated Senior Debt due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise become due and payable.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall make any Securities Payment to the Trustee or any Holder prohibited by the foregoing provisions of this Section, and if such fact shall, at or prior to the time of such Securities Payment, have been made known to the Trustee or, as the case may be, such Holder, then and in such event such Securities Payment shall be paid over and delivered forthwith to the Company.

The provisions of this Section shall not apply to any Securities Payment with respect to which Section 12.3 would be applicable.

#### **12.5 Payment Permitted If No Default.**

Nothing contained in this Article or elsewhere in this Indenture or in any of the Securities shall prevent (a) the Company, at any time except during the pendency of any Proceeding referred to in Section 12.3 or under the conditions described in Section 12.4, from making Securities Payments, or (b) the application by the Trustee of any funds deposited with it hereunder to Securities Payments or the retention of such Securities Payment by the Holders, if, at the time of such application by the Trustee, it did not have knowledge that such Securities Payment would have been prohibited by the provisions of this Article.

**12.6 Subrogation to Rights of Holders of Senior Debt of the Company.**

Subject to the payment in full of all amounts due or to become due on or in respect of Senior Debt of the Company, or the provision for such payment in cash or cash equivalents or otherwise in a manner satisfactory to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, the Holders of the Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of such Senior Debt of the Company to receive payments and distributions of cash, property and securities applicable to the Senior Debt of the Company until the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities shall be paid in full. For purposes of such subrogation, no payments or distributions to the holders of the Senior Debt of the Company of any cash, property or securities to which the Holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article, and no payments over pursuant to the provisions of this Article to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company by Holders of the Securities or the Trustee, shall, as among the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Debt of the Company and the Holders of the Securities, be deemed to be a payment or distribution by the Company to or on account of the Senior Debt of the Company.

**12.7 Provisions Solely to Define Relative Rights.**

The provisions of this Article are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the Holders on the one hand and the holders of Senior Debt of the Company on the other hand. Nothing contained in this Article or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Securities is intended to or shall (a) impair, as among the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Debt of the Company and the Holders of the Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional (and which, subject to the rights under this Article of the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, is intended to rank equally with all other general obligations of the Company), to pay to the Holders of the Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms; or (b) affect the relative rights against the Company of the Holders of the Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of Senior Debt of the Company; or (c) prevent the Trustee or the Holder of any Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article of the holders of Senior Debt of the Company to receive cash, property and securities otherwise payable or deliverable to the Trustee or such Holder.

**12.8 Trustee to Effectuate Subordination.**

Each Holder of a Security by his acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination provided in this Article and appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

**12.9 No Waiver of Subordination Provisions.**

No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Debt of the Company to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Company or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Company with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof any such holder may have or be otherwise charged with.

Without in any way limiting the generality of the foregoing paragraph, the holders of Senior Debt of the Company may, at any time and from time to time, without the consent of or notice to the Trustee or the Holders of the Securities, without incurring responsibility to the Holders of the Securities and without impairing or releasing the subordination provided in this Article or the obligations hereunder of the Holders of the Securities to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company, do any one or more of the following: (i) change the manner, place or terms of payment or extend the time of payment of, or renew or alter, Senior Debt of the Company, or otherwise amend or supplement in any manner Senior Debt of the Company or any instrument evidencing the same or any agreement under which Senior Debt of the Company is outstanding; (ii) sell, exchange, release or otherwise deal with any property pledged, mortgaged or otherwise securing Senior Debt of the Company; (iii) release any Person liable in any manner for the collection of Senior Debt of the Company; and (iv) exercise or refrain from exercising any rights against the Company and any other Person.

#### **12.10 Notice to Trustee.**

The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any fact known to the Company which would prohibit the making of any payment to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article or any other provision of this Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities, unless and until the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof from the Company or a holder of Senior Debt of the Company or from any trustee therefor; and, prior to the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 6.1, shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; provided, however, that if the Trustee shall not have received the notice provided for in this Section at least three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any funds may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security), then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such funds and to apply the same to the purpose for which such funds were received and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary which may be received by it within three Business Days prior to such date.

Subject to the provisions of Section 6.1, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Debt of the Company (or a trustee therefor) to establish that such notice has been given by a holder of Senior Debt of the Company (or a trustee therefor). In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Debt of the Company to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Debt of the Company held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article, and if such evidence is not furnished, the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.



**12.11 Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent.**

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 6.1, and the Holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree entered by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such Proceeding is pending, or a certificate of the trustee in bankruptcy, receiver, liquidating trustee, custodian, assignee for the benefit of creditors, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the Holders of Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such payment or distribution, the holders of the Senior Debt of the Company and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article.

**12.12 Trustee Not Fiduciary for Holders of Senior Debt of the Company.**

The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Debt of the Company and shall not be liable to any such holders if it shall in good faith mistakenly pay over or distribute to Holders of Securities or to the Company, or to any other Person cash, property or securities to which any holders of Senior Debt of the Company shall be entitled by virtue of this Article or otherwise.

**12.13 Rights of Trustee as Holder of Senior Debt of the Company; Preservation of Trustee's Rights.**

The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article with respect to any Senior Debt of the Company which may at any time be held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Debt of the Company, and nothing in this Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

Nothing in this Article shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 6.7.

**12.14 Article Applicable to Paying Agents.**

In case at any time any Paying Agent other than the Trustee shall have been appointed by the Company and be then acting hereunder, the term "Trustee" as used in this Article Twelve shall in such case (unless the context otherwise requires) be construed as extending to and including such Paying Agent within its meaning as fully for all intents and purposes as if such Paying Agent were named in this Article Twelve in addition to or in place of the Trustee; provided, however, that Section 12.13 shall not apply to the Company or any Affiliate of the Company if it or such Affiliate acts as Paying Agent.

### **12.15 Defeasance of this Article Twelve.**

The subordination of the Securities of a series provided by this Article Twelve is expressly made subject to the provisions for Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance in Article Thirteen hereof and, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, upon the effectiveness of any such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, the Securities of such series then outstanding shall thereupon cease to be subordinated pursuant to this Article Twelve.

## **ARTICLE THIRTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE**

### **13.1 Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.**

The Company may elect, at its option at any time, to have Section 13.2 or Section 13.3 applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, designated pursuant to Section 3.1 as being defeasible pursuant to such Section 13.2 or 13.3, in accordance with any applicable requirements provided pursuant to Section 3.1 and upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article. Any such election shall be evidenced in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in another manner specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities.

### **13.2 Defeasance and Discharge.**

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations, and the provision of Article Twelve will cease to be effective with respect to such Securities as provided in this Section on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 13.4 are satisfied (herein called "Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Securities and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), subject to the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (1) the rights of Holders of such Securities to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 13.4 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities when payments are due, or, if applicable, to convert such Securities in accordance with their terms; (2) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 10.2 and 10.3, and, if applicable, its obligations with respect to the conversion of such Securities; (3) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder; and (4) this Article. Subject to compliance with this Article, the Company may exercise its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option (if any) to have Section 13.3 applied to such Securities.

### **13.3 Covenant Defeasance.**

Upon the Company's exercise of its option (if any) to have this Section applied to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, (1) the Company shall be released from its obligations under Section 8.1(3), Sections 10.5 through 10.8, inclusive, and any covenants provided pursuant to Section 3.1(21), 9.1(2) or 9.1(7) for the benefit of the Holders of such

Securities; and (2) the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 5.1(5) (with respect to any of Section 8.1(3), Sections 10.6 through 10.8, inclusive, and any such covenants provided pursuant to Section 3.1(21), 9.1(2) or 9.1(7)), 5.1(6), 5.1(7), 5.1(10) and 5.1(11) shall be deemed not to be or result in an Event of Default (herein called "Covenant Defeasance"). For this purpose, such Covenant Defeasance means that, with respect to such Securities, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such specified Section (to the extent so specified in the case of Section 5.1(5)) or Article Twelve, whether directly or indirectly by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or Article or by reason of any reference in any such Section or Article to any other provision herein or in any other document, but the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

#### **13.4 Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.**

The following shall be the conditions to the application of Section 13.2 or Section 13.3 to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be:

(1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee which satisfies the requirements contemplated by Section 6.9 and agrees to comply with the provisions of this Article applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefits of the Holders of such Securities, (A) money in an amount, or (B) U.S. Government Obligations which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, in each case sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or any such other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, the principal of and any premium and interest on such Securities on the respective Stated Maturities, in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and such Securities. As used herein, "U.S. Government Obligation" means (x) any security which is (i) a direct obligation of the United States of America for the payment of which the full faith and credit of the United States of America is pledged or (ii) an obligation of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, which, in either case (i) or (ii), is not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and (y) any depositary receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any U.S. Government Obligation which is specified in clause (x) above and held by such bank for the account of the holder of such depositary receipt, or with respect to any specific payment of principal or interest on any U.S. Government Obligation which is so specified and held, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depositary receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation or the specific payment of principal or interest evidenced by such depositary receipt.

(2) In the event of an election to have Section 13.2 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling or (B) since the date of this instrument, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case (A) or (B) to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit, Defeasance and discharge to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit and Defeasance were not to occur.

(3) In the event of an election to have Section 13.3 apply to any Securities or any series of Securities, as the case may be, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of such Securities will not recognize gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the deposit and Covenant Defeasance to be effected with respect to such Securities and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would be the case if such deposit and Covenant Defeasance were not to occur.

(4) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that neither such Securities nor any other Securities of the same series, if then listed on any securities exchange, will be delisted as a result of such deposit.

(5) No event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with regard to any such event specified in Sections 5.1(7) and (8), at any time on or prior to the 121st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until after such 121st day).

(6) Such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not cause the Trustee to have a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act (assuming all Securities are in default within the meaning of such Act).

(7) Such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound.

(8) At the time of such deposit, (A) no default in the payment of any principal of or premium or interest on any Senior Debt of the Company shall have occurred and be continuing, (B) no event of default with respect to any Senior Debt of the Company shall have resulted in such Senior Debt becoming, and continuing to be, due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise have become due and payable (unless payment of such Senior Debt has been made or duly provided for), and (C) no other event of default with respect to any Senior Debt of the Company shall have occurred and be continuing permitting (after notice or lapse of time or both) the holders of such Senior Debt (or a trustee on behalf of such holders) to declare such Senior Debt due and payable prior to the date on which it would otherwise have become due and payable.

(9) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause either the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(10) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent with respect to such Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

### **13.5 Deposited Money and U.S. Government Obligations to be Held in Trust; Miscellaneous Provisions.**

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.3, all money and U.S. Government Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee or other qualifying trustee (solely for purposes of this Section and Section 13.6, the Trustee and any such other trustee are referred to collectively as the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 13.4 in respect of any Securities shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any such Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal and any premium and interest, but money so held in trust need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. Money and U.S. Government Obligations so held in trust shall not be subject to the provisions of Article Twelve.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the U.S. Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 13.4 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or U.S. Government Obligations held by it as provided in Section 13.4 with respect to any Securities which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect the Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, as the case may be, with respect to such Securities.

### **13.6 Reinstatement.**

If the Trustee or the Paying Agent is unable to apply any funds in accordance with this Article with respect to any Securities by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the obligations under this Indenture and such Securities from which the Company has been discharged or released pursuant to Section 13.2 or 13.3 shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this Article with respect to such Securities, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all funds held in trust pursuant to Section 13.5 with respect to such Securities in accordance with this Article; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of or any premium or interest on any such Security following such reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights (if any) of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the funds so held in trust.

**ARTICLE FOURTEEN**  
**SINKING FUNDS**

**14.1 Applicability of Article.**

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of any series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.1 for such Securities.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of any Securities is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment”, and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of any Securities, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 14.2. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities as provided for by the terms of such Securities.

**14.2 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.**

The Company (1) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption); and (2) may apply as a credit Securities of a series which have been (x) converted or (y) redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as and to the extent provided for by the terms of such Securities; provided, however, that the Securities to be so credited have not been previously so credited. The Securities to be so credited shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price, as specified in the Securities so to be redeemed, for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly. Not less than 35 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for such Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities pursuant to Section 14.2 and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 32 days prior to each such sinking fund payment date, the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 11.3 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 11.4. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 11.6 and 11.7.

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

ISSUER:

PHX Minerals Inc.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

TRUSTEE

, As Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_



March 12, 2024

PHX Minerals Inc.  
 1320 South University Drive, Suite 720  
 Fort Worth, Texas 76107

Re: PHX Minerals Inc. Registration Statement on Form S-3

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to PHX Minerals Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), in connection with the preparation and filing by the Company of a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the “Registration Statement”) with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “Commission”) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”). The Registration Statement relates to the issuance and sale from time to time, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, of the following securities with an aggregate offering price of up to \$100,000,000: (i) shares of common stock of the Company, par value \$0.01666 per share (“Common Stock”), (ii) shares of preferred stock of the Company, par value \$0.01666 per share (“Preferred Stock”), in one or more series, (iii) debt securities of the Company, in one or more series, which may be either secured or unsecured senior debt securities (“Senior Debt Securities”) or secured or unsecured subordinated debt securities (“Subordinated Debt Securities”, and, together with the Senior Debt Securities, “Debt Securities”), (iv) warrants (“Warrants”) to purchase the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities or other securities of the Company included in the Registration Statement, (v) the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities or other securities of the Company included in the Registration Statement that may be issued upon exercise of the Warrants, (vi) depositary shares of the Company representing fractional interests in shares of Preferred Stock of any series which may be evidenced by depositary receipts (the “Depositary Shares”), (vii) subscription rights (“Rights”) to purchase the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities or other securities of the Company included in the Registration Statement, (viii) the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities or other securities of the Company included in the Registration Statement that may be issued upon exercise of the Rights; (ix) units (“Units”) consisting of Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities, Warrants, Depositary Shares, Rights or any combination of the foregoing and (x) such indeterminate amount of the Offered Securities (as defined below) as may be issued in exchange for or upon conversion or exchange of, or pursuant to anti-dilution adjustments with respect to, as the case may be, the Offered Securities. The Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities, the Warrants, the Depositary Shares, the Rights and the Units are hereinafter referred to collectively as the “Offered Securities”.

The Offered Securities will be sold or delivered from time to time as set forth in the Registration Statement, any amendments thereto, the prospectus included in the Registration Statement (the “Prospectus”) and supplements to the Prospectus (the “Prospectus Supplements”). The Senior Debt Securities will be issued under an Indenture to be entered into between the Company and a U.S. banking institution, as trustee (the “Senior Indenture”), and qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of



1939, as amended (the "TIA"). The Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued under an Indenture to be entered into between the Company and a U.S. banking institution, as trustee (the "Subordinated Indenture", and, together with the Senior Indenture, the "Indentures"), and qualified under the TIA. Forms of the Senior Indenture and the Subordinated Indenture are included as exhibits to the Registration Statement.

The Warrants will be issued pursuant to Warrant Agreements to be entered into by the Company and a bank or trust company as Warrant Agent (each, a "Warrant Agreement"), the form of which will be filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement when the Warrants are issued.

The Depositary Shares will be issued pursuant to a Deposit Agreement (the "Deposit Agreement") between the Company and a depositary, the form of which will be filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement when the Depositary Shares are issued.

The Rights will be issued pursuant to Rights Agreements (each, a "Rights Agreement") to be entered into by the Company and a rights agent, the form of which will be filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement when the Rights are issued.

The Units will be issued pursuant to purchase or similar agreements to be entered into by the Company and the parties thereto, the form of which will be filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement when the Units are issued.

In connection with this opinion, we have examined originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, as amended (the "Certificate of Incorporation"), and Amended and Restated Bylaws, each as amended to the date hereof; the Registration Statement (including the Exhibits thereto); the forms of Indentures included as exhibits to the Registration Statement; the records of corporate proceedings that have occurred prior to the date hereof with respect to the Registration Statement; such agreements, certificates of public officials, certificates of officers or other representatives of the Company and others; and such other documents, certificates and records as we have deemed necessary as a basis for the opinions set forth below. We have also reviewed such questions of law as we have deemed necessary or appropriate. As to matters of fact relevant to the opinions expressed herein, and as to factual matters arising in connection with our examination of corporate documents, records and other documents and writings, we relied upon certificates and other communications of corporate officers of the Company, without further investigation as to the facts set forth therein.

In our examination, we have assumed all information contained in all documents reviewed by us is true and correct, the legal capacity of all natural persons, the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of the originals of the documents submitted to us, the conformity to the authentic original of any documents submitted to us as copies, the authenticity of the originals of such latter documents and that the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto (including all necessary post-effective amendments) will have become effective and comply with all applicable laws. We also have assumed

that a definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement with respect to any Offered Securities will have been duly authorized, validly executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto. As to any facts material to the opinions expressed herein which were not independently established or verified by us, we have relied upon oral or written statements and representations of officers and other representatives of the Company and others.

Based upon the foregoing and subject to the assumptions, qualifications, exceptions and limitations set forth herein, we are of the opinion that:

1. With respect to shares of the Common Stock being registered under the Registration Statement (including any shares of Common Stock duly issued: (a) upon the exchange or conversion of any shares of Preferred Stock that are exchangeable or convertible into Common Stock, (b) upon the exercise of any duly issued Warrants exercisable for Common Stock, (c) upon the exchange or conversion of Debt Securities which are exchangeable or convertible into Common Stock, (d) pursuant to a Right or (e) as a component of a Unit), when (i) the Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board") has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of the Common Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (ii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iii) certificates representing the shares of Common Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered, and delivered (or non-certificated shares of Common Stock shall have been properly issued) and (iv) the Common Stock has been delivered by the Company upon purchase thereof and payment in full therefor (at a price not less than the par value of the Common Stock) as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Common Stock, then such shares of Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

2. With respect to shares of the Preferred Stock being registered under the Registration Statement (including any shares of Preferred Stock duly issued: (a) upon the exchange or conversion of shares of Preferred Stock that are exchangeable or convertible into another series of Preferred Stock, (b) upon the exercise of any duly issued Warrants exercisable for Preferred Stock, (c) upon the exchange or conversion of Depositary Shares or Debt Securities which are exchangeable or convertible into Preferred Stock, (d) pursuant to a Right or (e) as a component of a Unit), when (i) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of the Preferred Stock, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, including the adoption of a resolution establishing and designating the series and fixing and determining the preferences, limitations and relative rights thereof, (ii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iii) a certificate of designations relating to each series of the Preferred Stock in a form to be included as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or filed as an exhibit to a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement has been duly adopted by the Board and filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, (iv) certificates representing the shares of the series of Preferred Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered (or non-certificated shares of Preferred Stock shall have been properly issued) and (v) the Preferred Stock has been delivered by the Company upon purchase thereof and payment in full therefor (at a price not less than the par value of the Preferred Stock) as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Preferred Stock, then such shares of Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

3. With respect to the Debt Securities being registered under the Registration Statement (including any Debt Securities duly issued: (a) upon the exercise of any duly issued Warrants exercisable for Debt Securities, (b) pursuant to a Right or (c) as a component of a Unit), when (i) the Company has taken all necessary corporate or other action to approve the issuance and terms of the Debt Securities, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (ii) the terms of such Debt Securities, and of their issuance and sale, have been duly established in conformity with the applicable Indenture and officers' certificate, issuer's order or supplemental indenture, as the case may be, so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and so as to comply with any requirements or restrictions imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company, (iii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iv) the Indenture, Indentures or supplemental Indentures, as the case may be, have been duly executed and delivered by the parties thereto and duly qualified under the TIA, (v) the trustee, at the time the applicable Indenture is signed, will be qualified to act as trustee under the applicable Indenture and the TIA and that the trustee will have duly executed and delivered the applicable Indenture and (vi) the Debt Securities have been duly executed and authenticated in accordance with the terms of the Indentures or supplemental Indentures and delivered by the Company upon purchase thereof and payment in full therefor as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Debt Securities, then such Debt Securities will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

4. With respect to the Warrants being registered under the Registration Statement (including any Warrants duly issued as a component of a Unit), when (i) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the creation, issuance and terms of the Warrants, the issuance and terms of the Debt Securities, the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock or other securities to be issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (ii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iii) the Warrant Agreement relating to the Warrants in a form to be included as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement has been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the Warrant Agent appointed by the Company and (iv) the Warrants or certificates representing the Warrants have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered in the applicable form by the Company upon the purchase thereof and payment in full as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Warrants, then such Warrants will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

5. With respect to the Depositary Shares being registered under the Registration Statement (including any Depositary Shares duly issued: (a) upon the exercise of any duly issued Warrants exercisable for Depositary Shares, (b) pursuant to a Right or (c) as a component of a Unit) when (i) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of the

Depository Shares, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, including the adoption of a resolution establishing and designating the series and fixing and determining the preferences, limitations and relative rights of the Preferred Stock underlying the Depository Shares, (ii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iii) a certificate of designations relating to each series of Preferred Stock underlying the Depository Shares in a form to be included as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or filed as an exhibit to a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement has been duly adopted by the Board and filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, (iv) the Deposit Agreement relating to the Depository Shares in a form to be included as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or filed as an exhibit to a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the related depository receipts have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the depository appointed by the Company, (v) the shares of Preferred Stock underlying the Depository Shares have been deposited with the depository under the applicable Deposit Agreement, (vi) the depository receipts representing the Depository Shares have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered in accordance with the appropriate Deposit Agreement approved by the Company and (vii) the Depository Shares have been delivered by the Company upon purchase thereof and payment in full therefor as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Depository Shares, then such Depository Shares will be validly issued and will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company.

6. With respect to the Rights being registered under the Registration Statement (including any Rights duly issued as a component of a Unit), when (i) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of the Rights and the Debt Securities, the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock or other securities to be issued upon exercise of the Rights, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (ii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iii) the Rights Agreement relating to the Rights in a form to be included as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement has been executed and delivered and (iv) the Rights have been duly authorized, executed, countersigned, issued, delivered and sold in the applicable form in accordance with the Rights Agreement and as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Rights, then such Rights will be valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

7. With respect to the Units being registered under the Registration Statement, when (i) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of the Units, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, (ii) the Registration Statement, as finally amended (including all necessary post-effective amendments), has become effective under the Securities Act, (iii) the agreement relating to the Units (the "Units Agreement") in a form to be included as an exhibit to the Registration Statement or in a Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered, (iv) the specific terms of the Units have been duly authorized and established in accordance with the Units Agreement and (v) the Units have been duly authorized, executed, countersigned, issued, delivered and sold in accordance with the Units Agreement and the applicable underwriting or other agreement against payment therefor and in the applicable form as contemplated by the Prospectus contained in the Registration Statement and any Prospectus Supplements relating to the Units, then such Units will constitute legally valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

The opinions expressed above are limited by and subject to the following qualifications:

(a) We express no opinion other than as to the federal laws of the United States, the Delaware General Corporation Law, and the state laws of the State of New York, in each case as in effect on the date hereof.

(b) In rendering the opinions expressed herein, we have assumed that no action that has been taken by the Company in connection with the matters described or referred to herein will be modified, rescinded or withdrawn after the date hereof. We have also assumed that (i) the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, and any amendments thereto (including post-effective amendments) shall not have been terminated or rescinded, (ii) a Prospectus Supplement will have been prepared and filed with the Commission describing the Offered Securities offered thereby, (iii) all Offered Securities will have been issued and sold in compliance with applicable United States federal and state securities laws and in the manner specified in the Registration Statement and the applicable Prospectus Supplement to the Prospectus, (iv) a definitive underwriting or similar agreement with respect to any Offered Securities will have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto, (v) the Indentures, and any supplemental Indentures relating to a particular series of Debt Securities, will be duly authorized, executed and delivered by the parties thereto in substantially the form reviewed by us, (vi) any securities issuable upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any Preferred Stock, Debt Securities, Warrants, Depositary Shares, Rights or Units being offered will have been duly authorized, created and, if appropriate, reserved for issuance upon such conversion, exchange or exercise, (vii) at the time of the issuance of the Offered Securities (A) the Company validly exists and is duly qualified and in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of incorporation or organization, (B) the Company has the necessary corporate and due authorization and (C) the Certificate of Incorporation is in full force and effect and has not been amended, restated, supplemented or otherwise altered, and there has been no authorization of any such amendment, restatement, supplement or other alteration, since the date hereof, and (viii) at the time of issuance of any shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock (including any such shares issuable upon the conversion of another Offered Security), the Company has a sufficient number of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as the case may be, under its Certificate of Incorporation.

(c) The opinions expressed in paragraphs 3, 4, 6 and 7 above are subject to the qualification that the validity and binding effect of the Offered Securities, the Indentures and any supplemental Indentures, the Deposit Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Rights Agreement and the Units Agreement may be limited or affected by (i) bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, fraudulent transfer, reorganization, receivership, moratorium or similar laws affecting the rights and remedies of creditors generally and (ii) general principles of equity (regardless of whether considered in a proceeding in equity or at law), including without limitation obligations and standards of good faith, fair dealing, materiality and reasonableness and defenses relating to unconscionability or to impracticability or impossibility of performance.

(d) This opinion letter is furnished to you in connection with the filing of the Registration Statement in connection with the requirements of Item 601(b)(5) of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act, and is not to be used, circulated, quoted or otherwise relied on for any other purpose. This opinion letter is limited to the matters expressly stated herein, and no opinions may be inferred or implied beyond the matters expressly stated herein. The opinions expressed herein are rendered and speak only as of the date hereof and we specifically disclaim any responsibility to update such opinions subsequent to the date hereof or to advise you of subsequent developments affecting such opinions.

(e) The Deposit Agreement, the Indentures and any supplemental Indentures, the Warrants, the Warrant Agreement, the Rights, the Rights Agreement, the Units and the Units Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of New York.

(f) We express no opinions concerning (i) the validity or enforceability of any provisions contained in the Indentures that purport to waive or not give effect to rights to notices, defenses, subrogation or other rights or benefits that cannot be effectively waived under applicable law or (ii) the enforceability of indemnification provisions to the extent they purport to relate to liabilities resulting from or based upon negligence or any violation of federal or state securities or blue sky laws.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion with the Commission as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement. We also consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the Prospectus forming a part of the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder. This opinion is expressed as of the date hereof unless otherwise expressly stated and we disclaim any undertaking to advise you of any subsequent changes of the facts stated or assumed herein or any subsequent changes in applicable law.

Very truly yours,

*/s/ Jackson Walker LLP*

Jackson Walker LLP

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption “Experts” in the Registration Statement (Form S-3) and related Prospectus of PHX Minerals Inc. for the registration of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, warrants, depositary shares, rights, and units and to the incorporation by reference therein of our report dated March 12, 2024, with respect to the financial statements of PHX Minerals Inc. included in its Annual Report (Form 10-K) for the year ended December 31, 2023, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP  
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma  
March 12, 2024

## CAWLEY, GILLESPIE & ASSOCIATES, INC.

PETROLEUM CONSULTANTS

6500 RIVER PLACE BLVD, SUITE 3-200  
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78730-1111  
512 249 7000

306 WEST SEVENTH STREET, SUITE 302  
FORT WORTH, TEXAS 76102-4987  
817 336 2161  
WWW.CGAS.COM

1000 LOUISIANA STREET, SUITE 1900  
HOUSTON, TEXAS 77002-5008  
713 651 9944

March 12, 2024

PHX Minerals Inc.  
1320 South University Drive, Suite 720  
Fort Worth, Texas 76107

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We hereby consent to the use of the name Cawley, Gillespie & Associates, Inc., to references to Cawley, Gillespie & Associates, Inc. as independent petroleum engineers, and to the inclusion of information taken from the reports listed below in, and the incorporation by reference of such information into, the Registration Statement on Form S-3 of PHX Minerals Inc. to be filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on or about March 12, 2024, and any amendments or prospectus supplements filed with respect thereto (collectively, the "Form S-3"):

- Report as of December 31, 2023 on Reserves and Revenue of Certain Properties with Interests Attributable to PHX Minerals Inc;
- Report as of December 31, 2022 on Reserves and Revenue of Certain Properties with Interests Attributable to PHX Minerals Inc.; and
- Report as of September 30, 2022 on Reserves and Revenue of Certain Properties with Interests Attributable to PHX Minerals Inc.

We also consent to the incorporation by reference of our reports of third party dated March 13, 2023 and January 23, 2024, which were filed as exhibits to the Annual Report on Form 10-K of PHX Minerals Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2023, into the Form S-3.

Very truly yours,

/s/ W. Todd Brooker

W. Todd Brooker, President  
CAWLEY, GILLESPIE & ASSOCIATES, INC.  
Texas Registered Engineering Firm F-693



**Calculation of Filing Fee Tables**

**Form S-3**  
(Form Type)

**PHX Minerals Inc.**

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

Table 1: Newly Registered and Carry Forward Securities

	Security Type	Security Class Title	Fee Calculation or Carry Forward Rule	Amount Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Unit	Maximum Aggregate Offering Price	Fee Rate	Amount of Registration Fee	Carry Forward Form Type	Carry Forward File Number	Carry Forward Initial effective date	Filing Fee Previously Paid In Connection with Unsold Securities to be Carried Forward
<b>Newly Registered Securities</b>												
Fees to Be Paid	Equity	Common Stock, par value \$0.01666 per share	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Equity	Preferred Stock	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Debt	Debt Securities	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Other	Warrants	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Other	Depository Shares	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Other	Rights	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Other	Units	—	—	—	—	—	—				
	Unallocated (Universal) Shelf	Unallocated (Universal) Shelf	457(o)	—(1)	—(2)	\$100,000,000	\$0.00014760	\$14,760.00				
Fees Previously Paid												
<b>Carry Forward Securities</b>												
Carry Forward Securities												
	Total Offering Amounts					\$100,000,000		\$14,760.00				
	Total Fees Previously Paid							—				
	Total Fee Offsets							\$6,936.93(3)				
	Net Fee Due							\$7,823.07				

Table 2: Fee Offset Claims and Sources

	Registrant or Filer Name	Form or Filing Type	File Number	Initial Filing Date	Filing Date	Fee Offset Claimed	Security Type Associated with Fee Offset Claimed	Security Title Associated with Fee Offset Claimed	Unsold Securities Associated with Fee Offset Claimed	Unsold Aggregate Offering Amount Associated with Fee Offset Claimed	Fee Paid with Fee Offset Source
Rule 457(p)											
Fee Offset Claims	PHX Minerals Inc.	Form S-3	333-221370	11/06/2017		\$5,914.39(3)	—(3)	—(3)	—(3)	—(3)	
Fee Offset Claims	PHX Minerals Inc.	Form S-3	333-249538	10/19/2020		\$1,022.54(3)	—(3)	—(3)	—(3)	\$56,693,141(3)	
Fee Offset Sources	PHX Minerals Inc.	Form S-3	333-221370		11/6/2017						\$5,914.39(3)
Fee Offset Sources	PHX Minerals Inc.	Form S-3	333-249538		10/19/2020						\$1,022.54(3)

- (1) The amount to be registered consists of up to \$100,000,000 aggregate offering price of an indeterminate amount of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, warrants, depositary shares, rights, and/or units of the registrant. There is also being registered hereunder such currently indeterminate number of (i) shares of common stock or other securities of the registrant as may be issued upon conversion, exchange or exercise, as applicable, of any preferred stock, debt securities, warrants, depositary shares, rights, or units, or (ii) shares of common stock, preferred stock or debt securities as may be issued upon exercise of warrants registered hereby, as the case may be, including under any applicable antidilution provisions. Any securities registered hereunder may be sold separately or together with other securities registered hereunder. Pursuant to Rule 416 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), this registration statement also covers any additional securities that may be offered or issued in connection with any stock split, stock dividend or pursuant to anti-dilution provisions of any of the securities. Separate consideration may or may not be received for securities that are issuable upon conversion, exercise or exchange of other securities.
- (2) The proposed maximum offering price per security will be determined from time to time by the registrant in connection with the issuance by the registrant of the securities registered hereunder and is not specified as to each class of security pursuant to General Instruction II.D. of Form S-3 under the Securities Act.
- (3) On November 6, 2017, the registrant filed a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-221370), which was declared effective on November 15, 2017 (the “2017 Registration Statement”). On October 19, 2020, the registrant filed a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-249538), which was declared effective on February 24, 2021 (the “2021 Registration Statement”). Both the 2017 Registration Statement and the 2021 Registration Statement registered the offer and sale of an indeterminate number or amount of common stock, preferred stock, warrants, debt securities and units, having an aggregate initial offering price of \$75,000,000. With respect to the 2021 Registration Statement, the registrant applied \$8,170.62 of the previously paid filing fee for the 2017 Registration Statement and paid an additional filing fee of \$1,022.54 for registration of additional securities. The registrant has \$56,693,141 of unsold securities under the 2021 Registration Statement. As a result, an aggregate \$6,936.93 (the “Unused Fees”) in previously paid fees (\$5,914.39 from the 2017 Registration Statement and \$1,022.54 from the 2021 Registration Statement) remain available for future offset (calculated at the fee rate in effect on the filing dates of the 2017 Registration Statement and the 2021 Registration Statement). In accordance with Rule 457(p) under the Securities Act, the registrant hereby applies the Unused Fees to offset the filing fee payable in connection with this filing.